This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

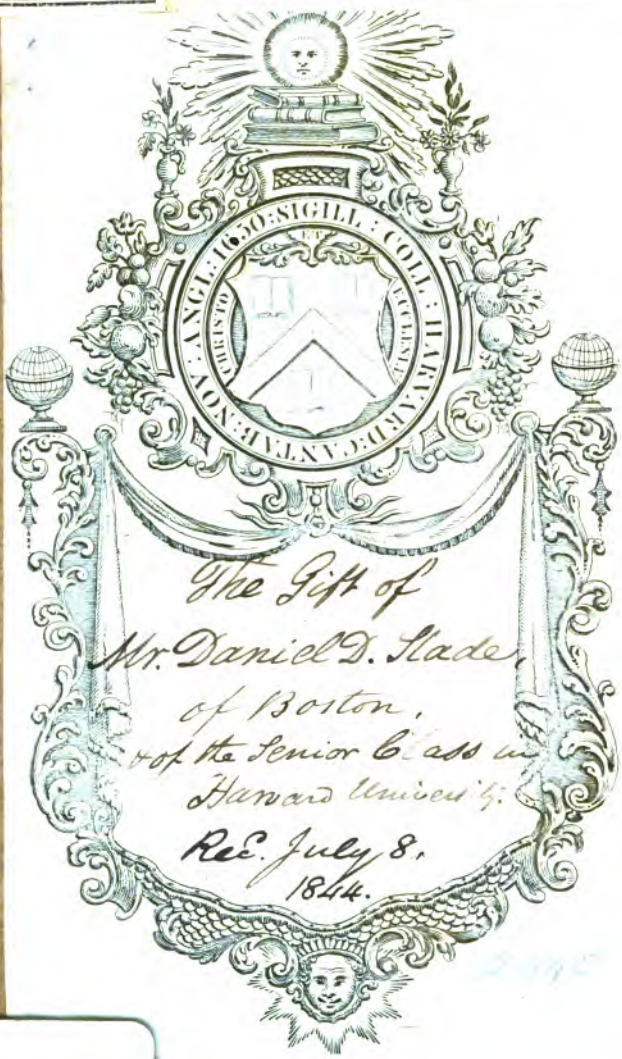
+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Educ T
918.14.120



3 2044 097 065 932

THE

RUDIMENTS

OF

LATIN GRAMMAR.

BY ALEXANDER ADAM, LL. D.

Rector of the High School of Edinburgh.

REVISED AND ABRIDGED BY EBENEZER FITCH, D. D.

PRESIDENT OF WILLIAMS' COLLEGE.

RECOMMENDED BY THE TRUSTEES OF SAID COLLEGE, TO BE USED BY THOSE WHO ARE INTENDED FOR THAT SEMINARY.

FOURTH EDITION.

TROY:

PRINTED BY PARKER AND BLISS,

Sold at the Troy Bookstore, sign of the Bible, and by the principal Booksellers.

1814.

Educ T 918.14.120

~~5253,78~~

~~Educ T 918.14~~

DISTRICT OF NEW-YORK, ss.

BE IT REMEMBERED, that on the Fifteenth day of June, in the thirty-eighth year of the Independence of the United States of America, WILLIAM S. PARKER and PELLATIAH BLISS, of the said District, have depofited in this office the title of a Book the right whereof they claim as proprietors, in the words following, to wit:

"The RUDIMENTS OF LATIN GRAMMAR. By Alexander Adam, LL. D. Rector of the High School of Edinburgh. Revifed and Abridged by Ebenezer Fitch, D. D. Prefident of Williams' College. Recommended by the Truftees of faid college to be ufed by thofe who are intended for that feminary."

In conformity to the Act of the Congrefs of the United States, entitled "An Act for the encouragement of Learning, by fecuring the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books to the authors and proprietors of fuch copies, during the time therein mentioned." And alfo to an Act, entitled "an Act fupplementary to an Act, entitled an Act for the encouragement of Learning, by fecuring the copies of Maps, Charts, and Books to the authors and proprietors of fuch copies, during the times therein mentioned, and extending the benefits thereof to the arts of deſigning, engraving and etching hiſtorical and other prints."

THERON RUDD,
Clerk of the Southern Diſtrict of New-York.

EXTRACTS

FROM THE AUTHOR'S ADVERTISEMENT.

THE materials of this Grammar are collected from the beſt Grammarians, chiefly from Mr. Ruddiman. In this edition there are ſeveral improvements. The *Syntax* is greatly enlarged, by the addition of many uſeful obſervations and examples; and particularly by a full explanation of the different meaning and conſtruction of Verbs and Prepoſitions, and of thoſe phraſes which occaſion moſt difficulty to learners, collected from the Claſſics, and from the beſt writers on Latinity.

By the natural diviſion of words and ſentences into Simple and Compound, no rule or example is introduced in Syntax or Proſody, till the learner is properly prepared, by what goes before, to underſtand it; which is not the caſe in the Latin Grammars commonly uſed: where, not to mention other inſtances, the conſtruction of the Relative, which requires a previous acquaintance with moſt of the other rules of conſtruction, is placed near the beginning of *Syntax*; and, what appears ſtill more prepoſterous, in Proſody, the rules concerning the quantity of compounds are placed before thoſe concerning the quantity of ſimple words. Theſe improprieties in arrangement occaſion greater inconvenience to learners than is generally imagined.

After the Syntax, there is a brief account and explanation of the various *Tropes* and *Figures* of words and of thought, which occur in the Claſſics, compiled from the moſt approved authors, chiefly from *Quinctilian*, and *Marſais ſur les Tropes*.

The greateſt care has every where been taken, to make the tranſlation of Latin words and phraſes ſubſervient to the knowledge of Engliſh. Theſe, and ſeveral other particulars not mentioned, it is hoped, will be found to be improvements of ſome importance in the plan of Education.

ADVERTISEMENT

OF THE PRESIDENT AND TRUSTEES OF WILLIAMS' COLLEGE.

THE inconvenience and diſadvantage experienced both by inſtructors and ſtudents, from the uſe of different Latin Grammars, render it highly expedient to eſtabliſh a uniformity in this College. Adam's Latin Grammar, which by very good judges, is conſidered as the beſt and moſt complete Grammar of the Latin Language, has for ſeveral years been generally uſed in this ſeminary. But the Engliſh part of this Grammar, which very conſiderably increaſes its ſize and price, is found by experience to be not only uſeleſs but very inconvenient to the ſtudent and inſtructor. An Abridgment of this Grammar having been ſhown to us, in which the Engliſh part, and other uſeleſs parts are omitted, we hereby recommend this cheap, abridged and more convenient Edition to all ſtudents who expect to reſort to this College for education, and direct that all who are hereafter admitted as members of this ſeminary uſe it in their claſſical exerciſes.

Williamſtown, Dec 30, 1805.

THE

RUDIMENTS

OF

LATIN GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of ſpeaking and writing correctly.

Latin Grammar is the art of ſpeaking and writing the Latin language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and eaſy inſtructions, teaching beginners the firſt principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of ſentences, and the ſeveral parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences conſiſt of words; Words conſiſt of one or more ſyllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole ſubject of Grammar.

LETTERS.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, ſ; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Conſonants*.

Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y.* All the reſt are conſonants.

A vowel makes a full ſound by itſelf; as, *a*, *e*.

A conſonant cannot make a perfect ſound without a vowel; as, *b*, *d*.

A vowel is properly called a *ſimple ſound*; and the ſounds formed by the concourſe of vowels and conſonants, *articulate ſounds*.

Conſonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Conſonants*.

A mute is ſo called, becauſe it entirely ſtops the paſſage of the voice; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p*, *b*; *t*, *d*; *c*, *k*, *q*, and *g*: but *b*, *d*, and *g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A ſemi-vowel, or half-vowel, does not entirely ſtop the paſſage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The ſemi-vowels are, *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *f*. The firſt four of theſe are alſo called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; becauſe they flow ſoftly and eaſily after a mute in the ſame ſyllable; as, *bla*, *ſtra*.

The mutes and ſemi-vowels may be thus diſtinguiſhed. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe*, *be*, &c.: but in naming the ſemi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el*, *em*, &c.

The double conſonants are *x*, *z*, and *j*. *X* is made up of *cs*, *ks*, or *gs*. *Z* ſeems not to be a double conſonant in Engliſh. It has the ſame relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being ſounded ſomewhat more ſoftly.

In Latin, *z*, and likewiſe *k*, and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

Y in Engliſh is ſometimes a conſonant, as in *youth*.

H by ſome is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

A Diphthong is two vowels joined in one ſound.

If the ſound of both vowels be diſtinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *omneis*. To theſe, ſome, not improperly, add other three, namely, *ai*; as in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Troia*; and *ui*, as in *Harpuia*; or in *cui* and *huic*, when pronounced as monoſyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two, *æ*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as *aetas*, or *ætas*; *œ*, or *æ*; as, *poena*, or *pœna*; in both which the ſound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels ſeparately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

SYLLABLES.

A ſyllable is the ſound of one letter, or of ſeveral letters pronounced by one impulſe of the voice.

In every word there are as many ſyllables as there are diſtinct ſounds.

In Latin there are as many ſyllables in a word, as there are vowels or dipthongs in it; unleſs when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *ſuadeo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, becauſe the ſound of the *u* vaniſhes, or is little heard.

Words conſiſting of one ſyllable, are called *Monoſyllables*; of two, *Diſſyllables*; and of more than two, *Polyſyllables*. But all words of more than one ſyllable, are commonly called *Polyſyllables*.

In dividing words into ſyllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words ſhould be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on*, *without*, &c. and ſo in Latin words, *ab-utor*, *in-ers*, *propter-ea*, *et-enim*, &c. In like manner, when a ſyllable is added in the formation of the Engliſh verb; as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *loveth*, *will-ing*, &c.

Obſerve, A long ſyllable is thus marked [-]; as, *amāre*; or with a circumflex accent thus, [^]; as, *amâris*. A ſhort ſyllable is marked thus [˘]; as, *omnĭbus*.

What pertains to the quantity of ſyllables, to accent, and verſe, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

A word is one or more ſyllables joined together, which men have agreed upon to ſignify ſomething.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology*, or *Analogy*.

All words may be divided into three kinds; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words; or what are called *Substantives*, *Attributives*, and *Connectives*. Thus, in the following sentence, "*The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home*," the words *boy*, *lesson*, *school*, *home*, are the names we give to the things spoken of; *diligent*, *reads*, *carefully*, express what is affirmed concerning the boy; *the*, *in*, *and*, *at*, are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive or derivative*.

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure*; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one, as *pius*, pious; *ego*, I; *doceo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words; or of one word, and some syllable added; as, *impius*, impious; *dedoceo*, I unteach; *egomet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other; as, *pius*, pious; *disco*, I learn; *doceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word; as, *pietas*, piety; *doctrina*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech*.

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight; 1. *Noun*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Participle*; declined: 2. *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Interjection*, and *Conjunction*; undeclined.

Declinable parts of speech are those which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied

only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation.*

The Engliſh language has one part of ſpeech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined: thus *filius regis*, may ſignify, either, *a ſon of a king*, or, *a king's ſon*; or *the ſon of the king*, or *the king's ſon.*

NOUN.

A noun is either ſubſtantive or adjective.

The adjective ſeems to be improperly called *noun:* it is only a word *added* to a ſubſtantive or noun, expreſſive of its quality; and therefore ſhould be conſidered as a different part of ſpeech. But as the ſubſtantive and adjective together expreſs but one object, and in Latin are declined after the ſame manner, they have both been comprehended under the ſame general name.

SUBSTANTIVE.

A Subſtantive, or noun, is the name of any perſon, place, or thing; as, *boy, ſchool, book.*

Subſtantives are of two ſorts; *proper* and *common* names.

Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of perſons and places: ſuch are, *Ceſar, Rome.*

Common names ſtand for whole kinds, containing ſeveral ſorts; or for ſorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man.*

Every particular being ſhould have its own proper name; but this is impoſſible, on account of their innumerable multitude: men have therefore been obliged to give the ſame common name to ſuch things as agree together in certain reſpects. Theſe form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *ſpecies*, or ſort.

A proper name may be uſed for a common, and then in Engliſh it has the article joined to it; as, when we ſay of ſome great conqueror, "He is *an* Alexander;" or, "*The* Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third claſs of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and

are called *abſtract nouns*; as, *hardneſs*, *goodneſs*, *whiteneſs*, *virtue*, *juſtice*, *piety*, &c.

When we ſpeak of things, we conſider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is ſpoken of, a noun is ſaid to be of the *ſingular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things conſidered according to their kinds, are either male or female, or neither of the two. Males are ſaid to be of the *maſculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things, of the *neuter gender*.

Such nouns as are applied to ſignify either the male or the female, are ſaid to be of the *common gender*, that is, either maſculine or feminine.

Various methods are uſed, in different languages, to expreſs the different connexions or relations of one thing to another. In the Engliſh, and in moſt modern languages, this is done by prepoſitions, or particles placed before the ſubſtantive; in Latin, by declenſion, or by different caſes; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, *or* the king; *regis*, of a king, or of the king.

LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders*, *Caſes*, and *Numbers*.

There are three genders, *Maſculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

The caſes are ſix, *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accuſative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

There are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called, the *firſt*, *ſecond*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth declenſions*.

Caſes are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to expreſs the relation of one thing to another.

They are ſo called, from *cado*, to fall; becauſe they fall, as it were, from the nominative; which is therefore

named *casus rectus*, the ſtraight caſe; and the other caſes, *caſus obliqui*, the oblique caſes.

The different declenſions may be diſtinguiſhed from one another by the termination of the genitive ſingular. The firſt declenſion has *æ* dipthong; the ſecond has *i*; the third has *is*; the fourth has *ûs*; and the fifth has *ëi* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be ſaid to have ſix caſes, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the ſingular and plural.

GENERAL RULES OF DECLENSION.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accuſative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers; and theſe caſes in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the moſt part in the ſingular, and always in the plural, is the ſame with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally loſe *s* in the Vocative; as, *Thomas, Thoma*; *Anchiſes, Anchiſe*; *Paris, Pari*; *Panthus, Panthu*; *Pallas, -antis, Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declenſion oftener retain the *s*; as, *ô Achilles*, or *-e*; *O Socrates*, or *-e*: and ſometimes nouns in *is* and *as*; as, *O Thais, Myſis, Pallas, -adis*, the goddeſs Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the moſt part want the plural:

Unleſs ſeveral of the ſame name be ſpoken of; as, *duodecim Cæſares*, the twelve Cæſars.

GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are ſaid to be of different genders, not merely from the diſtinction of ſex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and

not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination, which is applied to females; as, *bona penna*, a good pen, and not *bonus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hæc*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES CONCERNING GENDER.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Homērus*, Homer; *pater*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Helēna*, Helen; *mulier*, a woman; *uxor*, a wife; *mater*, a mother; *soror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the Goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as,

Hic *bos*, an ox; hæc *bos*, a cow; hic *parens*, a father; hæc *parens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adŏlescens, Juvĕnis, *a young man, or woman.*
Affinis, *a relation by marriage.*
Antistes, *a prelate.*
Auctor, *an author.*
Augur, *a soothsayer.*
Canis, *a dog or bitch.*
Civis, *a citizen.*
Cliens, *a client.*
Comes, *a companion.*
Conjux, *a husband, or wife.*
Convīva, *a guest.*
Custos, *a keeper.*
Dux, *a leader.*
Hæres, *an heir.*
Hostis, *an enemy.*
Infans, *an infant.*
Interpres, *an interpreter.*
Judex, *a judge.*
Martyr, *a martyr.*
Miles, *a soldier.*
Munĭceps, *a burgess.*
Nemo, *no body.*
Obses, *an hostage.*
Patruēlis, *a cousin-german, by the father's side.*
Præs, *a surety.*
Princeps, *a prince or princess.*
Sacerdos, *a priest or priestess.*
Sus, *a swine.*
Testis, *a witness.*
Vates, *a prophet.*
Vindex, *an avenger.*

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hospes*, also change their termination to express the feminine, thus, *antistita*, *clienta*, *hospita*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leena*, a lioness; *equus*, *equa*; *mulus*, *mula*; and many others.

There are ſeveral nouns, which, though applicable to both ſexes, admit only of a maſculine adjective; as, *advĕna*, a ſtranger; *agricŏla*, a huſbandman; *aſſecla*, an attendant; *accŏla*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur*, a thief; *opĭfex*, a mechanic, &c. There are others, which, though applied to perſons, are on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *ſcortum*, a courtezan; *mancipium*, *ſervitium*, a ſlave, &c.

In like manner, *operæ*, workmen; *vigiliæ*, *excubiæ*, watches; *noxæ*, guilty perſons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

OBSERVATIONS.

OBS. 1. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beaſts, birds, fiſhes, and inſects, in which the diſtinction of ſex is either not eaſily diſcerned, or ſeldom attended to. Thus, *paſſer*, a ſparrow, is maſculine, becauſe nouns in *er* are maſculine; ſo *aquĭla*, an eagle, is feminine, becauſe nouns in *a* of the firſt declenſion are feminine. Theſe are called *Epicene* or promiſcuous nouns. When any particular ſex is marked, we uſually add the word *mas* or *fœmĭna*, as *mas paſſer*, a male ſparrow; *femina paſſer*, a female ſparrow.

OBS. 2. A proper name, for the moſt part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers and mountains, are maſculine, becauſe *menſis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are maſculine; as, hic *Aprīlis*, April; hic *Aquĭlo*, the north wind; *Africus*, the ſouth-weſt wind; hic *Tiberis*, the river Tiber; hic *Othrys*, a hill in Theſſaly. But many of theſe follow the gender of their termination; as, hæc *Matrŏna*, the river Marne in France; hæc *Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; hoc *Soracte*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ſhips, are feminine, becauſe *terra* or *regio*, *urbs*, *arbor* and *navis*, are feminine; as, hæc *Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Samos*, an iſland of that name; *Corinthus*, the city Corinth; *pomus*, an apple tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ſhip: Thus alſo the names of poems, hæc *Ilias*, *ădos*,

; Gen. *ārum*; Dat. and

fem.

Plural.	*Terminations.*
pens;	*a, æ,*
of pens;	*æ, arum,*
to pens;	*æ, is,*
pens;	*am, as,*
O pens;	*a, æ,*
with pens.	*a, is.*

NS.

are masculine; *Hadrian* comet; *planēta*, a planet; and *dama*, a fallow-deer.

sometimes formed the *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*: which form the compounds *-familias*, the mistress of nom. plur. *matres-familias*,

ns have more frequently plural, to distinguish them *us* of the second declen-

, & Nata, *a daughter*.
rta, *a freed-woman*.
la, *a she-mule*.

than *filiis*, &c.

OUNS.

first declension, are Greek. uline: nouns in *e* are femi-

like *penna*; only they have *Ænēas*, Æneas the name *-æ*; acc *-am* or *-an*; voc. the north wind; *Tiāras*, *-æ*, ve commonly *am*, but in po-

and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; hæc *Æneïs*, *-ĭdos*, a poem of Virgil's; hæc *Eunūchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, hic *Pontus*, a country of that name; hic *Sulmo*, *-ōnis*; *Pessĭnus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*; names of towns; hæc *Persis*, *-ĭdis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthāgo*, *-inis*, the city Carthage; hoc *Albion*, Britain; hoc *Cære*, *Reate*, *Prænestе*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Gelida Prænestе*, Juv. *Ilion defensa*, Ovid.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, *-tri*, a wild olive tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cytĭsus*, a kind of shrub; *rubus*, the bramble-bush; *larix*, the larch-tree; *lotus*, the lot-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum*, the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *suber*, *-ĕris*, the cork-tree; *filer*, *-ĕris*, the osier; *robur*, *-ŏris*, oak of the hardest kind; *acer*, *-ĕris*, the maple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbustum*, *querĕtum*, *esculĕtum*, *salĭtum*, *fruticĕtum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow: Also the names of fruits and timber; as, *pomum*, or *malum*, an apple; *pirum*, a pear; *ebĕnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

OBS. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender*; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dies*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*. Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a*; Gen. and Dat. *æ* dipthong; Acc. *am*;

Abl. *â*: Nom. and Voc. Plur. *æ*; Gen. *ārum*; Dat. and Abl. *is*; Acc. *as*; Thus,

Penna, *a pen, fem.*

Singular.		*Plural.*		*Terminations.*
N. penna,	*a pen*;	*N* pennæ,	*pens*;	*a, æ,*
G. pennæ,	*of a pen*;	*G.* pennārum,	*of pens*;	*æ, arum,*
D. pennæ,	*to a pen*;	*D.* pennis,	*to pens*;	*æ, is,*
A. pennam,	*a pen*;	*A.* pennas,	*pens*;	*am, as,*
V. penna,	*O pen*;	*V.* pennæ,	*O pens*;	*a, æ,*
A. pennâ,	*with a pen*;	*A.* pennis,	*with pens.*	*â, is.*

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are maſculine; *Hadrias* the Hadriatic ſea; *comēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and ſometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dama*, a fallow-deer. *Paſcha*, the paſſover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins ſometimes formed the genitive ſingular in *āi*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*: and ſometimes likewiſe in *as*; which form the compounds of *familia* uſually retain; as, *mater-familias*, the miſtreſs of a family; gen. *matris-familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres-familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, to diſtinguiſh them in theſe caſes from maſculines in *us* of the ſecond declenſion:

Anĭma, *the ſoul.*	Filia, & Nata, *a daughter.*
Dea, *a goddeſs.*	Liberta, *a freed-woman.*
Equa, *a mare.*	Mula, *a ſhe-mule.*
Famula, *a female ſervant.*	

Thus, *deābus*, *filiābus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the firſt declenſion, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are maſculine: nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accuſative; as, *Ænēas*, Æneas the name of a man; gen. *Ænēæ*; dat. *-æ*; acc *-am* or *-an*; voc. *-a*; abl. *-â*. So *Boreas*, *-æ*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, *-æ*, a turban. In proſe they have commonly *am*, but in po-

etry oftener *an*, in the accuſative. Greek nouns in *a* have ſometimes alſo *an* in the acc. in poetry; as *Oſſa*, *-am*, or *-an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined,

Anchīſes, *Anchiſes, the name of a man.*

Singular.

Nom. Anchiſes,	*Acc.* Anchiſen,
Gen. Anchiſæ,	*Voc.* Anchiſe,
Dat. Anchiſæ,	*Abl.* Anchiſe.

Penelŏpe, *Penelope, the name of a woman.*

Singular.

Nom. Penelope,	*Acc.* Penelopen,
Gen. Penelopes,	*Voc.* Penelope,
Dat. Penelope,	*Abl.* Penelope.

Theſe nouns, being proper names, want the plural unleſs when ſeveral of the ſame name are ſpoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrīda*, for *Atrides*; *Perſa* for *Perſes*, a Perſian; *Geometra*, for *-tres*, a Geometrician: *Circa* for *Circe*; *Epitŏma*, for *-me*, an abridgment; *Grammatica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *Rhetŏrĭca*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accuſative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found ſometimes in *em*.

Note. We ſometimes find the genit. plur. contracted; as, *Cælĭcō lûm*, for *Cælicolarum*; *Æneădûm*, for *-arum*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the ſecond declenſion end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the reſt are maſculine.

Nouns of the ſecond declenſion have the gen. ſing. in *i*; the dat. and abl. in *o*; the acc. in *um*; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e*:) The nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a*; the gen. in *orum*; the dat. and abl. in *is*; and the acc. in *os*, or *a*; as,

Gĕner, *a ſon-in-law, maſc.*

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Terminations.*
Nom. gener,	*Nom.* genĕri,	*er, ir, us, i,*
Gen. genĕri,	*Gen.* generōrum,	*i, orum,*
Dat. genero,	*Dat.* generis,	*o, is,*
Acc. generum,	*Acc.* generos,	*um, os,*
Voc. gener,	*Voc.* generi,	*er, ir, e, i,*
Abl. genero.	*Abl.* generis.	*o, is.*

After the ſame manner decline *ſocer, -ĕri,* a father-in-law; *puer, -ĕri,* a boy; So *Furcifer,* a villain; *Lucĭfer,* the morning ſtar; *adulter,* an adulterer; *armĭger,* an armour bearer; *presbўter,* an elder; *Mulcĭber,* a name of the god Vulcan; *veſper,* the evening; and *Iber, -ēri,* a Spaniard, the only noun in *er,* which has the genit. long, and its compound *Celtĭber, -ēri:* Alſo, *vir, viri,* a man, the only noun in *ir;* and its compounds, *Levir,* a brother-in-law; *Semĭvir, duumvir, triumvir, &c.* And likewiſe *Satur, -ŭri,* full, (of old *ſaturus,*) an adjective.

But moſt nouns in *er* loſe the *e* in the genitive; as,

Ager, *a field, maſc.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. ager,	*Nom.* agri,
Gen. agri,	*Gen.* agrōrum,
Dat. agro,	*Dat.* agris,
Acc. agrum,	*Acc.* agros,
Voc. ager,	*Voc.* agri,
Abl. agro.	*Abl.* agris.

In like manner, decline,

Aper, *a wild boar.*
Arbĭter, *a judge.*
Auſter, *the ſouth wind.*
Cancer, *a crab-fiſh.*
Caper, *an he-goat.*
Colŭber, *a ſerpent.*
Culter, *the coulter of a plough, a knife.*
Faber, *a workman.*
Magiſter, *a maſter.*
Miniſter, *a ſervant.*
Onăger, *a wild aſs.*
Scalper, *a lancet.*

Alſo, *liber,* the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri:* but *liber,* free, an adjective, and *Liber,* a name of Bacchus, the God of wine, have *liberi.* So likewiſe proper names, *Alexander, Evander, Periander, Menander, Teucer, Meleāger,* &c. gen. *Alexandri, Evandri,* &c.

Some nouns in *os* have the gen. sing. in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, gen. *Androgeo*, or *-ēi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atho*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both which are also found in the third decl. thus, nom. *Androgeo*, gen. *Androgeōnis*: So *Atho* or *Athon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the gen. in *u*; as, *Menandru*, *Apollodōru*, for *Menandri*, *Apollodori*. Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the acc. in *um* or *on*; as, *Delus* or *Delos* acc. *Delum* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the gen. plur. in *ŏn*; as, *Georgĭca*, gen. plur. *Georgĭcŏn*, books which treat of husbandry, as Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*. Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*, with the second; and *s* with all the other declensions. *A*, *i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these; nom. sing. *a*, *e*, &c; gen. *is*: dat. *i*; acc. *em*; voc. *the same with the nominative*; abl. *e*, or *i*: nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es*, *a*, or *ia*; gen. *um*, or *ium*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; thus,

Sermo, *speech*, *masc.*	
Sing.	*Plur.*
N. sermo,	*N* sermōnes,
G. sermōnis,	*G.* sermōnum,
D. sermoni,	*D.* sermonĭbus,
A. sermonem,	*A* sermones,
V. sermo,	*V.* sermones,
A. sermone.	*A* sermonibus.

Caput, *the head*, *neut.*	
Sing.	*Plur.*
N. caput,	*N.* capĭta,
G. capĭtis,	*G.* capitum,
D. capĭti,	*D.* capitĭbus,
A. caput,	*A.* capĭta,
V. caput,	*V.* capita,
A. capite.	*A.* capitibus.

Rupes, *a rock*, *fem.*	
Sing.	*Plur.*
N. rupes,	*N.* rupes,
G. rupis,	*G.* rupium,
D. rupi,	*D.* rupibus,
A. rupem,	*A.* rupes,
V. rupes,	*V.* rupes,
A. rupe.	*A.* rupĭbus.

Sedile, *a seat*, *neut.*	
Sing.	*Plur.*
N. sedile,	*N.* sedilia.
G. sedilis,	*G.* sedilium,
D sedili,	*D.* sedilĭbus,
A. sedile,	*A.* sedilia,
V. sedile,	*V.* sedilia,
A. sedili.	*A.* sedilĭbus.

Lapis, *a stone, masc.*		Iter, *a journey, neut.*	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
N. lapis,	*N.* lapĭdes,	*N.* iter,	*N.* itinĕra,
G. lapĭdis,	*G* lapidum,	*G.* itinĕris,	*G.* itinerum,
D. lapidi,	*D.* lapĭdĭbus,	*D.* itineri,	*D.* itinĕrĭbus,
A. lapidem,	*A.* lapides,	*A.* iter,	*A.* itinera,
V. lapis,	*V.* lapides,	*V.* iter,	*V.* itinera,
A. lapide.	*A.* lapidibus.	*A.* itinere.	*A.* itineribus.

Of the GENDER and GENITIVE of Nouns of the Third Declension.

A, E, I, and *Y.*

1. Nouns in *a, e, i,* and *y,* are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *ătis* ; as, *diadēma, diadēmătis,* a crown ; *dogma, -ătis,* an opinion. So,

Ænigma, *a riddle.*
Arōma, *sweet spices.*
Epigramma, *an inscription.*
Numisma, *a coin.*
Phasma, *an apparition.*
Poēma, *a poem.*
Schema, *a scheme* or *figure.*
Apothegma, *a short pithy saying.*
Sophisma, *a deceitful argument.*
Stemma, *a pedigree.*
Stigma, *a mark* or *brand, a disgrace.*
Stratagēma, *an artful contrivance.*
Axiōma, *a plain truth.*
Diplōma, *a charter.*
Thēma, *a theme, a subject to write* or *speak on.*
Toreuma, *a carved vessel.*

Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is* ; as, *rete, retis,* a net.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis ;* as,

sermo, sermōnis, speech ; *draco, dracōnis,* a dragon.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *io* are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body ; as, *ratio, rationis,* reason. But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine ; as,

Curculio, *the throat-pipe, the weasand.*
Papilio, *a butterfly.*
Pugio, *a dagger.*
Scipio, *a staff.*
Scorpio, *a scorpion.*
Septentrio, *the north.*
Stellio, *a lizard.*
Titio, *a firebrand.*
Unio, *a pearl.*
Vespertillo, *a bat.*
Ternio, *the number three.*
Quaternio, — — *four.*
Senio, — — *six.*

or *Achilli*, contracted for *Achillĕi* or *Achillei*, of the second decl. from *Achillĕus*: So *Ulyſſes*, *Pericles*, *Verres*, *Ariſtotĕles*, &c.

IS.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the ſame with the nominative; as, *auris*, *auris*, the ear; *avis*, *avis*, a bird.

EXC. 1. The following nouns are maſculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Axis, axis, *an axle-tree.*
Aquālis, *a water-pot*, *an ewer.*
Callis, *a beaten road.*
Caulis, *the ſtalk of an herb.*
Collis, *a hill.*
Cenchris, *a kind of ſerpent.*
Enſis, *a ſword.*
Faſcis, *a bundle.*
Fecialis, *a herald.*
Follis, *a pair of bellows.*
Fuſtis, *a ſtaff.*
Menſis, *a month.*
Mugĭlis, *or* -il, *a mullet-fiſh.*
Orbis, *a circle*, *the world.*
Patruelis, *a couſin-german.*
Piſcis, *a fiſh.*
Poſtis, *a poſt.*
Sodālis, *a companion.*
Torris, *a fire-brand.*
Unguis, *the nail.*
Vectis, *a lever.*
Vermis, *a worm.*

To theſe add Latin nouns in *nis*; as, *panis*, bread; *crinis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *funis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *ĭdis*; as, *tyrannis*, *tyrannĭdis*, tyranny.

EXC. 2. The following nouns are alſo maſculine, but form their genitive differently:

Cinis, ĕris, *aſhes.*
Cucŭmis, -is, *or* -ĕris, *a cucumber.*
Dis, dītis, *the god of riches*, or *rich*, an adj.
Glis, glīris, *a rat.*
Impubis, or impubes, -is, *or* ĕris, *not marriageable.*
Lapis, -ĭdis, *a ſtone.*
Pubis *or* pubes, -is, *or oftener* -ĕris, *marriageable.*
Pulvis, -ĕris, *duſt.*
Quiris, -ītis, *a Roman.*
Samnis, -ītis, *a Samnite.*
Sanguis, -ĭnis, *blood.*
Semis, iſſis, *the half of any thing.*
Vomis, *or* -er, -ĕris, *a ploughſhare.*

Samnis and *Quiris*, *pubis* and *impubis*, from the nature of their ſignification, may alſo be feminine, being properly adjectives. *Pulvis* and *cinis* are likewiſe ſometimes feminine. *Semis* is alſo ſometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Exſanguis*, bloodleſs, an adj. has *exſanguis* in the gen.

Exc. 3. The following are either masc. or femin. and form the genitive according to the general rule;

Amnis, *a river.*
Anguis, *a snake.*
Canālis, *a conduit-pipe.*
Clunis, *the buttock.*
Corbis, *a basket.*
Finis, *the end:* fines, *the boundaries of a field or territories, is always masc.*
Scrobis, *or* scrobs, *a ditch.*
Torquis, *a chain.*

Exc. 4. These feminines have *ĭdis: Cassis, -ĭdis,* a helmet; *cuspis, -ĭdis,* the point of a spear; *capis, -ĭdis,* a kind of cup; *pronuptis, -ĭdis,* a kind of drink, metheglin. *Lis,* strife, f. has *lītis.*

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: Some have *eos* or *ios*; as, *hærĕsis, -eos,* or *-ios,* or *-is,* a heresy; *basis, -is,* f. the foot of a pillar; *phrasis,* a phrase; *phthisis,* a consumption; *pŏesis,* poetry; *metropŏlis,* a chief city, &c. Some have *ĭdis,* or *ĭdos*; as, *Paris, -ĭdis,* or *ĭdos,* the name of a man; *aspis, -ĭdis,* f. an asp; *ephemĕris, -ĭdis,* f. a day-book; *Iris, -ĭdis,* f. the rainbow; *pyxis, -ĭdis,* f. a box. So *Ægis,* the shield of Pallas; *canthăris,* a sort of fly; *periscĕlis,* a garter; *proboscis,* an elephant's trunk; *pyrămis,* a pyramid; and *tigris,* a tiger, *-ĭdis,* seldom *ĭgris*: all fem. Part have *ĭdis*; as, *Psophis, -ĭdis,* the name of a city: others have *ĭnis*; as, *Eleusis, -ĭnis,* the name of a city: and some have *entis*; as, *Simois, Simoentis,* the name of a river. *Charis,* one of the graces, has *Charĭtis.*

OS.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis*; as,
nepos, -ōtis, a grand child; *sacerdos, -ōtis,* a priest.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:

Arbos, *or* -or, -ŏris, *a tree.*
Cos, cōtis, *a whetstone.*
Dos, dōtis, *a dowry.*
Eos, cōis, *the morning.*
Glos, glōris, *the husband's sister, or brother's wife.*

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive:

Flos, flōris, *a flower.*
Honos, *or* -or, -ōris, *honour.*
Labos, *or* -or, -ōris, *labour.*
Lepos, *or* -or, -ōris, *wit.*
Mos, mōris, *a custom.*
Ros, rōris, *dew.*

Cuſtos, -ōdis, *a keeper*; alſo fem. Tros, Trōis, *a Trojan.*
Heros, herōis, *a hero.* Eos, bŏvis, m. or f. *an ox* or *cow.*
Minos, -ōis, *a king of Crete.*

Exc. 3. *Os, oſſis*, a bone; and *ās, oris*, the mouth, neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ōis*; as, *heros, -ōis*, a hero, or great man: So, *Minos*, a king of Crete; *Tros*, a Trojan; *thos*, a kind of wolf.

US.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ŏris*; as
pectus, pectŏris, the breaſt; *tempus, tempŏris*, time.

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ĕris.*

Acus, *chaff.* Munus, *a gift, or office.* Scelus, *a crime.*
Funus, *a funeral.* Olus, *pot-herbs.* Sidus, *a ſtar.*
Fœdus, *a covenant.* Onus, *a burden.* Vellus, *a fleece of wool.*
Genus, *a kind, or kindred.* Opus, *a work,* Viſcus, *an entrail.*
Glomus, *a clew.* Pondus, *a weight.* Ulcus, *a bile.*
Lætus, *the ſide.* Rudus, *rubbiſh.* Vulnus, *a wound.*

Thus, *acĕris, funĕris*, &c. *Glomus*, a clew, is ſometimes maſculine, and has *glomi*, of the ſecond declenſion. *Venus*, the goddeſs of love, and *vetus*, old, an adjective, likewiſe have *ĕris.*

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variouſly:

Incus, -ūdis, *an anvil.* Salus, -ūtis, *ſafety.*
Palus, -ūdis, *a pool or moraſs.* Senectus, -ūtis, *old age.*
Pecus, *(not uſed)* -ŭdis, *a ſheep.* Servĭtus, -ūtis, *ſlavery.*
Subſcus, -ūdis, *a dove-tail.* Virtus, -ūtis, *virtue.*
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth.* Intercus, -ūtis, *an hydropſy.*
Juventus, -ūtis, *youth.*

Intercus is properly an adjective, having *aqua* underſtood.

Exc. 3. Monoſyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris*, in the genitive; as,

Crus, crūris, *the leg.* Rus, rūris, *the country.*
Jus, jūris, *law or right*; alſo *broth.* Thus, thūris, *frankincenſe.*
Pus, pūris, *the corrupt matter of any ſore.* So Mus, mūris, maſc. *a mouſe.*

Ligus, or *-ur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligŭris*; *lepus*, maſc. a hare, *lepŏris*; *ſus*, maſc. or fem. a ſwine, *ſuis*; *grus*, maſc. or fem. a crane, *gruis.*

Œdĭpus, the name of a man, has *Œdipŏdis*: ſometimes it is of the ſecond declenſion, and has *Œdĭpi*. The compounds of *pus*, have *ŏdis*: as, *tripûs*; maſc. a tripod, *tripŏdis*; but *lagōpus*, *-ŏdis*, a kind of bird, or the herb hares-foot, is fem. Names of cities have *untis*; as, *Trapezus*, *Trapezuntis*; *Opus*, *Opuntis*.

YS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all derived from the Greek, and are for the moſt part feminine. In the genitive, they have ſometimes *yis*, or *yos*; as hæc *chelys*, *chelyis*, or *-yos*, a harp; *Capys*, *Capyis*, or *yos*, the name of a man: ſometimes they have *ȳdis*, or *ȳdos*, as, hæc *chlamys*, *chlamȳdis*, or *chlamȳdos*, a ſoldier's cloak; and ſometimes *ȳnis*, or *ȳnos*; as *Trachys*, *Trachȳnis*, or *Trachȳnos*, the name of a town.

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

Æs, æris, n. *braſs* or *money*.
Laus, laudis, f. *praiſe*.
Fraus, fraudis, f. *fraud*.
Præs, prædis, m. or f. *a ſurety*.

Subſtantives ending in the ſyllable *eus* are all proper names, and have the genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos*; *Tereus*, *Tereos*. But theſe nouns are alſo found in the ſecond declenſion, where *eus* is divided into two ſyllables; thus, *Orphĕus*, genit. *Orphĕi*, or ſometimes contracted *Orphei*, and that into *Orphī*.

S with a conſonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a conſonant before it, are feminine; and form the genitive by changing the s into *is* or *tis*; as,
trabs, *trăbis*, a beam; *ſcobs*, *ſcŏbis*, ſaw-duſt; *hiems*, *hĭemis*, winter; *gens*, *gentis*, a nation; *ſtips*, *ſtĭpis*, alms; *pars*, *partis*, a part; *ſors*, *ſortis*, a lot; *mors*, *-tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are maſculine:

Chalys, -ȳbis, *ſteel*.
Dens, -tis, *a tooth*.
Fons, -tis, *a well*.
Gryps, gryphis, *a griffon*.
Hydrops, -ōpis, *the dropſy*.
Merops, -ŏpis, *a wood-pecker*.
Mons, -tis, *a mountain*.
Pons, -tis, *a bridge*.
Seps, sēpis, *a kind of ſerpent*; but,
Seps, ſepis, *a hedge*, is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either maſc. or feminine:

Adeps, adĭpis, *fatneſs*.
Rudens, -tis, *a cable*.
Scrobs, ſcrŏbis, *a ditch*.
Serpens, -tis, *a ſerpent*.
Stirps, ſtirpis, *the root of a tree*.
Stirps, *an offſpring*, always fem.

Animans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but moſt frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polyſyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i*; as, *hæc forceps, forcĭpis*, a pair of tongs; *princeps, -ĭpis*, a prince, or princeſs; *particeps, -cĭpis*, a partaker; ſo likewiſe *cælebs, cælĭbis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *caput* have *cĭpĭtis*; as, *præceps, præcipĭtis*, headlong; *anceps, ancipĭtis*, doubtful; *biceps, -cipĭtis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucŭpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis*:

Frons, frondis, *the leaf of a tree.* Juglans, -dis, *a walnut.*
Glans, glandis, *an acorn.* Lens, lendis, *a nit.*

So, *librĭpens, libripendis*, a weigher; *nefrens, -dis*, a grice or pig; and the compounds of *cor*: as, *concors, concordis*, agreeing; *diſcors*, diſagreeing; *vecors*, mad, &c. But *frons*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulſe, *lentis*, alſo fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going; and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis*: thus, *iens, euntis; quiens, queuntis; rediens, redeuntis; nequiens, nequiuntis*: but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tiryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *caput, capĭtis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *ſincĭput, ſincĭpĭtis*, the forehead; and *occĭput, -ĭtis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,

Vox, vōcis, the voice; *lux, lūcis*, light.

Exc. 1. Polyſyllables in *ax* and *ex* are maſculine; as, *thorax, -ācis*, a breaſt-plate; *Corax, -ăcis*, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *ĭcis*; as, *pollux, -ĭcis*, the thumb.

Vervex, a wedder ſheep, has *vervēcis*; *fæniſex*, a mower of hay, *faniſĕcis*; *Reſex*, m. *-ĭcis*, a vine branch cut off.

To theſe maſculines add,

Calix, -ĭcis, *a cup.*
Calyx, -ȳcis, *the bud of a flower.*
Coccyx, -ȳgis, *vel.* ȳcis, *a cuckow.*
Fornix, -ĭcis, *a vault.*
Oryx, -ȳcis, *a wild-goat.*
Phœnix, -ĭcis, *a bird ſo called.*
Tradux, -ŭcis, *a graff, or off-ſet of a vine;* alſo fem.

But the following polyſyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine.

Fornax, -ācis, *a furnace.*
Panax, -ācis, *the herb all-heal.*
Smilax, -ācis, *the herb rope-weed.*
Carex, -ĭcis, *a ſedge.*
Climax, ācis, *a ladder.*
Forfex, -ĭcis, *a pair of ſciſſars.*
Halex, -ēcis, *a herring.*
Supellex, ſupellectĭlis, *houſehold furniture.*

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either maſculine or feminine; as,

Calx, -cis, *the heel, or the end of any thing, the gaol;* but calx, *lime, is always* fem.
Cortex, -ĭcis, *the bark of a tree.*
Hyſtrix, -ĭcis, *a porcupine.*
Imbrex, -ĭcis, *a gutter* or *roof tile.*
Lynx, -cis, *an ounce, a beaſt of a very quick ſight.*
Limax, -ācis, *a ſnail.*
Obex, -ĭcis, *a bolt or bar.*
Perdix, -ĭcis, *a partridge.*
Pumex, -ĭcis, *a pumice-ſtone.*
Rumex, -ĭcis, *ſorrel, an herb.*
Sandix, -ĭcis, *a purple colour.*
Silex, -ĭcis, *a flint.*
Varix, -ĭcis, *a ſwoln vein.*

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

Aquĭlex, -ĕgis, *a well-maker.*
Conjunx, *or* ux, -ŭgis, *a huſband* or *wife.*
Frux, *(not uſed)* frūgis, f. *corn.*
Grex, grĕgis, m. or f. *a flock.*
Lex, lēgis, f. *a law.*
Phalanx, -angis, f. *a phalanx.*
Remex, -ĭgis, *a rower,*
Rex, rēgis, *a king.*
Nix, nĭvis, f. *ſnow.*
Nox, noctis, f. *night.*
Senex, sĕnis, (an adj.) *old.*

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with reſpect to gender and declenſion, are as various as Latin nouns: thus, *bombyx, bombȳcis*, a ſilk worm, maſc. but when it ſignifies ſilk, or the yarn ſpun by the worm, it is feminine; *onyx*, maſc. or fem. *onȳchis*, a precious ſtone; and ſo *ſardonyx; larynx, laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe; *Phryx, Phrygis*, a Phrygian; *ſphinx, -ngis*, a fabulous hag; *ſtrix, -ĭgis*, f. a ſcreechowl; *Styx, -ȳgis*, f. a river in hell; *Hylax, -ăcis*, the name of a dog; *Bibrax, Bibractis*, the name of a town, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The Dative ſingular anciently ended alſo in *e*; as, *Eſurienti leoni ex ore exculpere prædam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. *Hæret pede pes*, Foot ſticks to foot, Virg. for *eſurienti* and *pedi*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accuſative in *im*:

Amuſſis, f. *a maſon's rule.*	Ravis, f. *hoarſeneſs.*
Buris, f. *the beam of a plough.*	Sinăpis, f. *muſtard.*
Cannăbis, f. *hemp.*	Sitis, f. *thirſt.*
Cucŭmis, m. *a cucumber.*	Tuſſis, f *the cough.*
Gummis, f. *gum.*	Vis, f. *ſtrength.*
Mephītis, f. *a damp or ſtrong ſmell.*	

To theſe add names of rivers, and ſome other proper names; as, *Tiběris, Tiběrim*, the Tiber; *Syrtis*, f. *-im*, a quickſand. Theſe ſometimes make the accuſative in *in*; as, *Bætin, Serăpin*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

Clavis, f. *a key.*	Pelvis, f. *a baſon.*	Secūris, f. *an ax.*
Cutis, f. *the ſkin.*	Puppis, f. *the ſtern of a ſhip.*	Sementis, f. *a ſowing.*
Febris, f. *a fever.*		Strigĭlis, f. *a horſe-comb.*
Navis, f. *a ſhip.*	Reſtis, f. *a rope.*	Turris, f. *a tower*, &c.

Thus *navem*, or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients ſaid *avim, aurim, ovim, peſtim, vallim, vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accuſative variouſly:

1. Greek nouns, whoſe genitive increaſes in *is* or *os* impure, that is, with a conſonant going before, have the accuſative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas, lampădis*, or *lampădes; lampădem, or lampăda*. In like manner, theſe three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros, Trōis, Troem*, and *Troa*, a Trojan; *heros*, a hero; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have only *a*: *Pan*, the god of ſhepherds; *æther*, the ſky; *delphin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pāna, æthĕra, delphīna*.

2. Maſculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *os* impure, form the accuſative in *im* or *in*, ſometimes in *ĭdem*, never *ĭda*; as, *Paris, Parĭdis*, or *Parĭdos; Parim*, or *Parin*, ſometimes *Parĭdem*, never *Parĭda*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increaſing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *ĭdem* or *ĭda*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis, Ēlĭdis* or *Ēlĭdos, Ēlĭdem* or *Ēlĭda*; ſeldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like

manner, feminines in *ys, ўdos*, have *ўdem*, or *ўda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *chlamys, -ўdem*, or *ўda*, not *chlamyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *os* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metamorphōsis, -eos*, or *-ios, metamorphosim* or *-in*, a change: *Tethys, -yos*, or *-yis*; *Tethym*, or *-yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eus*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thesēus, Thesea.*

ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e, al*, and *ar* have *i* in the ablative; as, *jedīle, jedīli*; *animal, animāli*; *caicar, calcāri*. Except proper names; as, *Præneste*, abl. *Prænestе*, the name of a town; and the following neuters in *ar*:

Far, farre, *corn.*	Nectar, -ăre, *drink of the gods.*
Hepar, -ătе, *the liver.*	Par, părе, *a match, a pair.*
Jubar, -ăre, *a sun-beam.*	Sal, sălе, *salt.*

Exc. 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis, vim, vi*; but *cannăbis, Bætis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris, turre*, or *turri*; but *restis*, a rope; and *cutis*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative; as, *finis, supellex, vectis, pugil*, a champion; *mugil* or *mugilis; rus, occiput:* Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi*; as, *habitat Carthagine* or *Carthagini*, he lives at Carthage. So, *civis, classis, fars, imber, anguis, avis, postis, fustis, amnis*, and *ignis*; but these have oftener *e*. *Canalis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i*; as, *æstati, cani, lapidi, ovi*, &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives; as, *bipennis, -i*, an halbert; *molāris, -i*, a millstone; *quadrirēmis, -i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprīlis, -i*; *December, -bri*, &c. But *rudis*, a rod given gladiators when discharged; *juvĕnis*, a young man, have only *e*; and likewise those ending in *il, x, ceps*, or *ns*; as,

Adolescens, *a young man.*	Princeps, *a prince.*	Torrens, *a brook.*
Infans, *an infant.*	Senex, *an old man.*	Vigil, *a watchman.*

Thus, *adolescente, infante, sene*, &c.

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye*, or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine; as, *fermones*, *rupes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*; as, *puppes*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural; but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia*; as, *capĭta*, *sedīlia*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium*; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*; *caput*, *capite*, *capĭtium*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e*; as, *mas*, a male, *măre*, *marium*; *vas*, a surety, *vădium*; but pollysyllables have rather *um*; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatium*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium*; as, *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium*; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um*: *parens*, *vates*, *panis*, *juvĕnis*, and *canis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the genitive plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular:

Caro, carnis, f. *flesh.*
Cohors, -tis, f. *a company.*
Cor, cordis, n. *the heart.*
Cos, cotis, f. *a bone or whetstone.*
Dos, dōtis, f. *a dowry.*
Faux, faucis, f. *the jaws.*
Glis, glīris, m. *a rat.*
Lar, laris, m. *a houshold-god.*
Linter, -tris, m. or f. *a little boat.*
Lis, litis, f. *strife.*
Mus, mūris, m. *a mouse.*
Nix, nĭvis, f. *snow.*
Nox, noctis, f. *the night.*
Os, ossis, n. *a bone.*
Quiris, -ītis, *a Roman.*
Samnis, -ītis, m. or f. *a Samnite.*
Uter, utris, m. *a bottle.*

Thus *Samnitium*, *lintrium*, *litium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as*; as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium*; *bes*, eight ounces, *besium*. *Bos*, an ox or cow, has *boum*, and in the dative, *bōbus*, or *būbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *Macĕdo*, a Macedonian; *Arabs*, an Arabian; *Æthiops*, an Ethiopian; *Monocĕros*, an unicorn; *Lynx*, a beast so called; *Thrax*, a Thracian: *Macedŏnum*, *Arăbum*, *Æthiŏpum*, *Monocerōtum*, *Lyncum*, *Thrācum*. But those which have *a* or *sis* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *ōn*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammătum*, or *epigrammatôn*, an epigram; *metamorphosis*, *-ium*, or *-eôn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; thus, *manes*, m. souls departed, *manium*; *cælites*, m. inhabitants of heaven, *cælitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* and *cæles*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnalia*, the feast of Saturn, *Saturnalium*, and *Saturnaliorum*.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as, *nocentûm* for *nocentium*: and sometimes to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; as, *cælĭtuum* for *cælĭtum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *Syncŏpe*; and the latter by *Epenthĕsis*.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tĭbus*; as, *poēma*, poem, *poemătis*, rather than *poematibus*, from the old nominative *poemătum*.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troăsi* or *Troăsin*, for *Troădibus*, from *Troas*, *Troădis*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS IN THE ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampădem*, or *lampăda*; *lampădes* or *lampădas*. So *Tros*, *Troas*; *heros*, *heroas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS THROUGH ALL THE CASES.

Lampas, f. *lampădis*, or *-ădos*; *-ădi*, *-ădem*, or *ada*; *-as*; *-ade*: Plural *-ades*; *-ădum*; *-adibus*; *-ades*, or *-adas*; *-ades*; *-adibus*.

Troas, f. *Troadis*, or *-ados*; *-i*; *em* or *a*; *as*; *e*: Plur. *Troades*; *-um*; *-ibus*, *si*, or *sin*; *es* or *as*; *es*; *ibus*.
Tros, m. *Trois*; *Troi*; *Troem* or *-a*; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.
Phillis, f. *Phillidis* or *-dos*, *di*, *dem* or *da*; *i*; *de*.
Paris, m. *Paridis* or *-dos*; *di*; *dem*, *Parim* or *in*; *i*; *de*.
Chlamys, f. *Chlamydis* or *-ydos*, *ydi*, *ydem* or *yda*, *ys*, *yde*, &c.
Capys, m. *Capyis*, or *-yos*; *yi*; *ym* or *yn*; *y*; *ye* or *y*.
Metamorphosis, f. *-is* or *-eos*, *i*, *em* or *in*, *i*, *i*, &c.
Orpheus, m. *eos*, *ĕi* or *ei*, *ea*, *eu*, abl. *eo* of the second decl.
Dido, f. *Didûs* or *Didōnis*, *Dido* or *Didoni*, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine: nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are; nom. sing. *us*; gen. *ûs*; dat. *ui*; acc. *um*; voc. *like the nom.*; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua*; gen. *uum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; as,

Fructus, *fruit, masc.*		Cornu, *a horn, neut.*	
Sing.	*Plur.*	*Sing.*	*Plur.*
N. fructus,	*N.* fructus,	*N.* cornu,	*N.* cornua,
G. fructûs,	*G.* fructuum,	*G.* cornu,	*G.* cornuum,
D. fructui,	*D.* fructĭbus,	*D.* cornu,	*D* cornĭbus,
A. fructum,	*A.* fructus,	*A.* cornu,	*A.* cornua,
V. fructus,	*V.* fructus,	*V* cornu,	*V.* cornua,
A. fructu.	*A.* fructibus.	*A.* cornu.	*A.* cornibus.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine:

Acus, *a needle.*	Manus, *the hand.*	Specus, *a den.*
Domus, *a house.*	Penus, *a florebouse.*	Tribus, *a tribe.*
Ficus, *a fig.*	Portĭcus. *a gallery.*	

Penus and *specus* are sometimes masc. *Ficus*, *Penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Capricornus*, m. the sign of Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unimănus*; *centimănus*, &c. *Domus* is but partly of the second; thus,

Domus, *a house, fem.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. domus,	*Nom.* domus,
Gen. domûs, *or* -mi,	*Gen.* domorum, *or* -uum,
Dat. domui, *or* -mo,	*Dat.* domibus,
Acc. domum,	*Acc.* domos, *or* -us,
Voc. domus,	*Voc.* domus,
Abl. domo.	*Abl.* domibus.

Note. *Domûs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, *or* of home; as, *memineris domi.* Ter.

Exc. 2. The following have *ŭbus* in the dative and ablative plural.

Acus, *a needle.*	Lacus, *a lake.*	Specus, *a den.*
Arcus, *a bow.*	Partus, *a birth.*	Tribus, *a tribe.*
Artus, *a joint.*	Portus, *a harbour.*	Veru, *a spit.*
Genu, *the knee.*		

Portus, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ĭbus*; as, *portĭbus* or *portŭbus.*

Exc. 3. IESUS, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in all the other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus, *fructus*, *fructūis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructue*; *fructues*, *fructuum*, *fructuibus*, *fructues*, *fructus*, *fructuibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*, and in others, the dative in *u*. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currûm* for *curruum.*

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender; as,

Res, *a thing*, *fem.*

Sing.	*Plur.*	*Terminations.*	
Nom. res,	*Nom.* res,	*ēs*,	*es*,
Gen. rĕi,	*Gen.* rērum,	*ei*,	*erum*,
Dat. rĕi,	*Dat.* rēbus,	*ei*,	*ebus*,
Acc. rem,	*Acc.* res,	*em*,	*es*,
Voc. res,	*Voc.* res,	*es*,	*es*,
Abl. re.	*Abl.* rēbus.	*e*,	*ebus.*

In like manner decline,

Acies, *the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.*	Ingluvies, *gluttony.*	Scabies, *the scab*, or *itch.*
Caries, *rottenness.*	Macies, *leanness.*	Series, *an order.*
Facies, *the face.*	Pernicies, *destruction.*	Species, *an appearance.*
Glacies, *ice.*	Proluvies, *a looseness.*	Superficies, *the surface.*
	Rabies, *madness.*	Temperies, *temperateness.*
	Sanies, *gore.*	

Except *dies*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *meridies*, the mid-day, or noon, masc.

The poets ſometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declenſion are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and ſeem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declenſion. Moſt of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declenſion end in *ies*, except three, *fides*, faith; *ſpes*, hope; *res*, a thing; and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except theſe four, *abies*, a fir tree; *aries*, a ram; *paries*, a wall; and *quies*, reſt; which are of the third declenſion.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three claſſes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable, either in gender, or declenſion, or in both.

I. Thoſe which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following claſſes:

1. *Maſculine in the ſingular, and neuter in the plural:*

Avernus, *a lake in Campania, hell.*	Mænălus, *a hill in Arcadia.*
Dindўmus, *a hill in Phrygia.*	Pangæus, *a promontory in Thrace.*
Iſmărus, *a hill in Thrace.*	Tænărus, *a promontory in Laconia.*
Maſsĭcus, *a hill in Campania, famous for excellent wines.*	Tartărus, *hell.*
	Tăygĕtus, *a hill in Laconia.*

Thus, *Averna, Avernorum; Dindyma, -orum, &c.* Theſe are thought by ſome to be properly adjectives, having *mons* underſtood in the ſingular, and *juga* or *cacumĭna* in the plural.

2. *Maſc. in the ſing. and in the plur. maſc. and neuter:*

Jocus, a jeſt, pl. *joci* and *joca*; *locus*, a place, pl. *loci* and *loca*.

When we ſpeak of paſſages in a book, or topics in diſcourſe, *loci* only is uſed.

3. *Feminine in the ſingular, and neuter in the plural:*

Carbăſus, a ſail, pl. *carbăſa*; *Pergămus*, the citadel of Troy, pl. *Pergama*.

4. *Neuter in the ſingular, and maſculine in the plural:*

Cælum, pl. *cœli*, heaven; *Elyſium*, pl *Elyſii*, the Elyſian fields; *Argos*, pl. *Argi*, a city in Greece.

5. *Neuter in the ſing. in the plur. maſc. or neuter:*

Raſtrum, a rake, pl. *raſtri* and *raſtra*; *frænum*, a bridle, pl. *fræni* and *fræna*.

6. *Neuter in the ſingular, and feminine in the plural:*

Delicium, a delight, pl. *deliciæ*; *Epŭlum*, a banquet, pl. *epŭlæ*; *Balneum*, a bath, pl. *balneæ* and *balnea*.

II. Nouns which vary in declenſion are called *heteroclites*; as, *vas*, *vāſis*, a veſſel, pl. *vaſa*, *vaſorum*; *jugĕrum*, *jugĕri*, an acre, pl. *jugĕra*, *jugĕrum*, *jugeribus*, which has likewiſe ſometimes *jugĕris* and *jugĕre* in the ſingular, from the obſolete *jugus* or *juger*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in caſes or in number.

Nouns are defective in caſes different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondo*, a pound or pounds; *fas*, right; *nefas*, wrong; *ſinăpi*, muſtard; *mane*, the morning; as, *clarum mane*, Perſ. *A mane ad veſperam*, Plaut. *Multo mane*, &c.; *cepe*, an onion; *gausăpe*, a rough coat, *&c.*; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; as, *velle ſuum*, for *ſua voluntas*, his own inclination. *Perſ. Iſtud cras*, for *iſte craſtinus dies*, that to-morrow. *Mart. O magnum Græcorum*, the *Omĕga*, or the large O of the Greeks; Infidus *eſt compoſitum ex* in *et* fidus; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To theſe add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin; as, *Joh*, *Eliſabet*, *Jeruſalem*, *&c.*

2. Some are uſed only in one caſe, and therefore called *monoptōta*; as, *inquies*, want of reſt, in the nominative ſingular; *dicis* and *nauci*, in the genit. ſing.; thus, *dicis gratia*, for form's ſake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *inficias* and *incĭta* or *incĭtas*, in the accuſative plural: thus, *ire inficias*, to deny; *ad incitas redactus*, reduced to a ſtrait, or non-plus; *ingratiis*, in the abl. plur. in ſpite of one; and theſe ablatives ſingular, *noctu*, in the night time; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readineſs; *natu*, by birth; *injuſſu*, without command or leave; *ergô*, for the ſake, as, *ergo illius*, Virg. *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious ſtory; *Compĕde*, m. with a fetter; *Caſſe*, m.

with a net; *vepres*, m. a briar: Plur. *Ambages*, *-ibus*; *compedes*, *-ibus*; *cassis*, *-ium*; *vepres*, *-ium*, &c.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *diptōta*; as, *necesse* or *-um*, necessity; *volŭpe* or *volup*, pleasure; *instar*, likeness, bigness; *astu*, a town; *hir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. sing.; *vesper*, m. abl. *vespĕre* or *vespĕri*, the evening; *siremps*, the same, all alike, abl. *sirempse*; *sponte*, f. in the genitive, and *sponte* in the ablative, of its own accord; so *impĕtis*, m. and *impĕte*, force; *verbĕris*, n. genit. and *verbĕre*, abl. a stripe; in the plural entire; *verbĕra*, *verberum*, *verberĭbus*, &c. *repetundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *suppetia*, nom. pl. *suppetias* in the acc. help; *inferiæ*, *inferias*, sacrifices to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prĕci*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used; in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibus*, &c. *Femĭnis*, gen. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dicā*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, plur. *dicas*; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *biems*, *rus*, *thus*, *metus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neuters, *melos*, a song; *mele*, songs; *epos*, a heroic poem; *cacoēthes*, an evil custom; *cete*, whales; *Tempe*, plural, a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grates*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetraptōta*: *vĭcis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pecudis*, f. of a beast; *sordis*, f. of filth; *ditiōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *opis*, f. of help. Of these, *pecŭdis* and *sordis* have the plural entire: *ditionis* wants it altogether: *vicis* is not used in the genitive plural; *opes* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn;

hardly uſed in the nominative ſingular, but in the plural moſtly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one caſe, and are called *pentaptōta*: thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with ſome others, want the genit. plur. *Chaos*, n. a confuſed maſs, wants the genit. ſing. and the plural entirely; dat. ſing. *chao*. So, *fatias*, i. e. *fatietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Situs*, a ſituation, naſtineſs, of the fourth decl. wants the genit. and perhaps the dative ſing. alſo the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in number there are various ſorts.

1. Several nouns want the plur. from the nature of the things which they expreſs. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, moſt abſtract nouns, &c. as, *juſtitia*, juſtice; *ambĭtus*, ambition; *aſtus*, cunning; *muſica*, muſic; *apium*, parſley; *argentum*, ſilver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *tritĭcum*, wheat; *hordeum*, barley; *avēna*, oats; *juventus*, youth, &c. But of theſe we find ſeveral ſometimes uſed in the plural.

2. The following maſculines are hardly ever found in the plural.

Aër, ăĕris, *the air.*
Æther, -ĕris, *the ſky.*
Fimus, -i, *dung.*
Heſpĕrus, -i, *the evening ſtar.*
Limus, -i, *ſlime.*
Meridies, -iēi, *mid-day.*
Mundus, *a woman's ornaments.*
Muſcus, -i, *moſs.*
Nemo, -ĭnis, *no body.*
Penus, -i, *or* ûs, *all manner of proviſions.*
Pontus, -i, *the ſea.*
Pulvis, -ĕris, *duſt.*
Sanguis, -ĭnis, *blood.*
Sopor, -ōris, *ſleep.*
Viſcus, -i, *bird-lime.*

3. The following feminines are ſcarcely uſed in the plural:

Argilla, -æ, *potters earth.*
Fama, -æ, fame.
Humus, -i, *the ground.*
Lues, -is, *a plague.*
Plebs, plēbis, *the common people.*
Pubes, -is, *the youth.*
Quies, -ētis, *reſt.*
Salus, -ūtis, *ſafety.*
Sitis, -is, *thirſt.*
Supellex, -ectĭlis, *houſehold furniture.*
Tabes, -is, *a conſumption.*
Tellus, -ūris, *the earth.*
Veſpĕra, -æ, *the evening.*

4. Theſe neuters are ſeldom uſed in the plural:

Album, -i, *a liſt of names.*
Dilucŭlum, -i, *the dawning of day.*
Ebur, -ŏris, *ivory.*
Gelu, *ind. froſt.*
Hilum, -i, *the black ſpeck of a bean, a trifle.*
Juſtitium, -i, *a vacation, the time when courts do not ſit.*
Lethum, *death.*
Lutum, -i, *clay.*
Nihil, nihĭlum, *or* nil, *nothing.*
Pelăgus, -i, *the ſea.*
Penum, -i, *and* penus, -ŏris, *all kinds of proviſions.*
Sal, Sălis. *ſalt.*
Senium, -ii, *old age.*
Ver, vēris, *the ſpring.*
Virus, -i, *poiſon.*

5. Many nouns want the ſingular. Such are the names of feaſts, books, games, and ſeveral cities; as,

Apollināres, -ium, *games in honour of Apollo.*
Bacchanalia, -ium, *the feaſts of Bacchus.*
Bucolĭca, -orum, *a book of paſtorals.*
Olympia, -orum, *the Olympic games.*
Syracūſæ, -arum, *Syracuſe.*
Hieroſolȳma, -orum, *Jeruſalem; or* Hieroſolyma, æ, *of the firſt declenſion.*

6. The following maſculines are hardly uſed in the ſingular:

Cancelli, *lattices.*
Cani, *gray hairs.*
Celĕres, -um, *the light-horſe.*
Codicilli, *writings.*
Dryădes, -um, *the nymphs of the woods.*
Druĭdes, -um, *the Druids, prieſts of the ancient Britons and Gauls.*
Decimæ, *tithes.*
Faſti, -orum, *or* faſtus, -uum, *callendars, in which were marked feſtival days, the names of magiſtrates, &c.*
Fori, *the hatches of a ſhip, ſeats in the Circus, or the cells of a bee-hive.*
Hyădes, -um, *the ſeven ſtars.*
Ineptiæ, *filly ſtories.*
Inferi, *the gods below.*
Liberi, *children.*
Poſtĕri, *poſterity.*
Supĕri, *the gods above.*
Caſſes, -ium, *a hunter's net.*
Faſces, -ium, *a bundle of rods, carried before the chief magiſtrates of Rome.*
Fines, -ium, *the borders of a country,* or *a country.*
Furfŭres, -um, *ſcales in the head.*
Lemŭres, -um, *hobgoblins, or ſpirits in the dark.*
Majōres, -um, *anceſtors.*
Minōres, -um, *ſucceſſors.*
Natāles, -ium, *parentage.*
Procĕres, -um, *the nobles.*
Pugillāres, -ium, *writing-tables.*
Sentes, -ium, *thorns.*
Vepres, -ium, *briars.*
Vergiliæ, *the ſeven ſtars.*

7. The following feminines want the ſingular number:

Alpes, -ium, *the Alps.*
Anguſtiæ, *difficulties.*
Apĭnæ, *gewgaws.*
Gades, -ium, *Cadiz.*
Gerræ, *trifles.*
Induciæ, *a truce.*
Parietīnæ, *ruinous walls.*
Partes, -ium, *a party.*

Argutiæ, *quirks, witticisms.*
Bigæ, *a chariot drawn —by two horses.*
Trigæ, ——— *by three.*
Quadrigæ, —— *by four.*
Braccæ, *breeches.*
Branchiæ, *the gills of a fish.*
Charites, -um, *the three graces.*
Cunæ, *a cradle.*
Diræ, *imprecations, the furies.*
Divitiæ, *riches.*
Excubiæ, *watches.*
Exsequiæ, *funerals.*
Exuviæ, *spoils.*
Facetiæ, *pleasant sayings.*
Feriæ, *holidays.*
Facultates, -ium, *one's goods and chattels.*
Induviæ, *clothes to put on.*
Insidiæ, *snares*
Kalendæ, Nonæ, Idus, -uum, *names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month.*
Lapicidīnæ, *stone-quarries.*
Litĕræ, *an epistle.*
Lactes, -ium, *the small guts.*
Manubiæ, *spoils taken in war.*
Minæ, *threats.*
Minutæ, *little nicetics.*
Nugæ, *trifles.*
Nundĭnæ, *a market.*
Nuptiæ, *a marriage.*
Offuciæ, *cheats.*
Operæ, *workmen.*
Phalĕræ, *trappings.*
Plagæ, *nets.*
Pleiades, -um, *the seven stars.*
Præstigiæ, *enchantments.*
Primitiæ, *first fruits.*
Quisquiliæ, *sweepings.*
Reliquiæ, *a remainder.*
Salebræ, *rugged places.*
Salīnæ, *salt pits.*
Scalæ, *a ladder.*
Scatebræ, *a spring.*
Scopæ, *a besom.*
Tenebræ, *darkness.*
Thermæ, *hot baths.*
Thermopylæ, *straits of mount Oeta.*
Tricæ, *toys.*
Valvæ, *folding doors.*
Vindiciæ, *a claim of liberty, a defence.*

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular:

Acta, *public acts or records.*
Æstiva, *summer-quarters.*
Arma, *arms.*
Bellaria, -orum, *sweet meats.*
Bona, *goods.*
Brevia, -ium, *shelves.*
Castra, *a camp.*
Charistia, -orum, *a peace-feast.*
Cibaria, *victuals.*
Comitia, *an assembly of the people.*
Crepundia, *children's bawbles.*
Cunabula, *a cradle.*
Dicteria, *scoffs, witticisms.*
Exta, *the entrails.*
Februa, -orum, *purifying sacrifices.*
Flabra, *blasts of wind.*
Fraga, *strawberries.*
Hyberna, sc. castra, *winter-quarters.*
Ilia, -ium, *the entrails.*
Incunabŭla, *a cradle.*
Insecta, *insects.*
Mœnia, -ium, *the walls of a city.*
Munia, *offices.*
Orgia, *the sacred rites of Bacchus.*
Ovilia, -ium, *an inclosure, where the people went to give their votes.*
Palearia, -ium, *the dew lap of a beast.*
Parapherna, *all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.*
Parentalia, -ium, *solemnities at the funeral of parents.*
Philtra, *love potions.*
Præcordia, *the bowels.*
Principia, *the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.*
Pythia, *games in honour of Apollo.*
Rostra, *a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.*
Scruta, *old clothes.*
Sponsalia, -ium, *espousals.*
Stativa, *a standing camp.*

3. A noun derived from a ſubſtantive proper, ſignifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros, Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas, -ădis*, a woman born at Troy; *Sicŭlus, -i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicĕlis, -ĭdis*, a Sicilian woman: ſo, *Macĕdo, -ōnis*; *Arpīnas, -ātis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja, Sicilia, Macedonia, Arpinum*. But patrials for the moſt part are to be conſidered as adjectives, having a ſubſtantive underſtood; as, *Romānus, Athenienſis*, &c.

4. A ſubſtantive derived from an adjective, expreſſing ſimply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exiſts, is called an *Abſtract*; as, *juſtitia*, juſtice; *bonitas*, goodneſs; *dulcēdo*, ſweetneſs: from *juſtus*, juſt; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, ſweet. The adjectives from which theſe abſtracts come, are called *Concretes*; becauſe, beſides the quality, they alſo ſuppoſe ſomething to which it belongs. Abſtracts commonly end in *a, as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from moſt adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A ſubſtantive derived from another ſubſtantive, ſignifying a diminution or leſſening of its ſignification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartŭla*, a little paper; *opuſculum*, a little work; *corcŭlum*, a little heart; *reticulum*, a ſmall net; *ſcabellum*, a ſmall ſtool; *lapillus*, a little ſtone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pagella*, a little page: from *liber, charta, opus, cor, rete, ſcamnum, lapis, culter, pagĭna*. Several diminutives are ſometimes formed from the ſame primitive; as, from *puer, puerŭlus, puellus, puellŭlus*; from *ciſta, ciſtŭla, ciſtella, ciſtellŭla*; from *homo, homuncio, homunculus*. Diminutives for the moſt part end in *lus, la, lum*; and are generally of the ſame gender with their primitives. When the ſignification of the primitive is increaſed, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o*; as, *Capito, -ōnis*, having a large head: So, *naſo, labeo, bucco*, having a large noſe, lips, cheeks.

6. A ſubſtantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun; as, *amor*, love; *doctrīna*, learning: from *amo* and *doceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io, or, us*, and *ura*; as, *lectio*, a leſſon; *amator*, a lover; *luctus*, grief; *creatūra*, a creature.

ADJECTIVE.

An adjective is a word *added* to a ſubſtantive, to expreſs its quality; as, *hard, ſoft.*

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality muſt belong to ſome ſubject. An adjective therefore always implies a ſubſtantive expreſſed or underſtood, and cannot make full ſenſe without it.

An adjective may be thus diſtinguiſhed from a ſubſtantive: If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make ſenſe; but if it be joined to a ſubſtantive, it will make nonſenſe: thus, we can ſay, "a good thing;" but we cannot ſay, "a book thing."

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and caſe, to agree with ſubſtantives, in all theſe accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor caſes; but certain terminations anſwering to the gender, number, and caſe of the ſubſtantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three ſubſtantives of the ſame termination and declenſion.

All adjectives are either of the firſt and ſecond declenſion, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the firſt and ſecond declenſion; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Exc. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declenſion:

Acer, *ſharp.*	Campeſter, *belonging to a plain*	Sylveſter, *woody.*
Alăcer, *cheerful.*		[*horſe* Pedeſter, *on foot.*
Celer, *ſwift.*	Equeſter, *belonging to a*	Paluſter, *marſhy.*
Celĕber, *famous.*	Salūber, *wholeſome.*	Volūcer, *ſwift.*

ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the firſt and ſecond declenſion have their maſculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um*; as, *bonus*, for the maſc. *bona*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good: thus,

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
N.	bon-us,	-a,	-um,	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
G	bon-i,	-æ,	-i,	bon-orum,	-arum,	-orum,
D	bon-o,	-æ,	-o,	bon-is,	-is,	-is,
A	bon-um,	-am,	-um,	bon-os,	-as,	-a,
V.	bon-e,	-a,	-um,	bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
A.	bon-o,	-â,	-o,	bon-is,	-is,	-is.

3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, *acer* or *acris*, for the maſc. *acris*, for the fem. *acre*, for the neut. ſharp; thus,

Sing.				*Plur.*		
N. a-cer *or* -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*N.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	*G.* a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	*D.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	*A.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. a-cer *or* -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*V.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri.	*A.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

In like manner, *alacer* or *alacris*, *celer* or *celeris*, *cĕleber* or *celebris*, *salūber* or *salūbris*, *volūcer* or *volucris*, &c.

RULES.

1. Adjectives of the third declenſion have *e* or *i* in the ablative ſingular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accuſative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *hoſpes*, *ſoſpes*, *ſuperſtes*, *juvĕnis*, *ſenex*, and *pauper*, have *e* only in the abiative ſingular, and conſequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have alſo *e* in the abl. ſing. and *um*, not *ium* in the gen. plur. *Compos*, *-ŏtis*, maſter of, that hath obtained his deſire; *impos*, *-ŏtis*, unable; *inops*, *-ŏpis*, poor; *ſupplex*, *-ĭcis*, ſuppliant, humble; *uber*, *-ĕris*, fertile; *conſors*, *-tis*, ſharing, a partner; *degĕner*, *-ĕris*, degenerate, *or* degenerating; *vigil*, watchful; *puber*, *-ĕris*, of age, marriageable; and *celer*: Alſo compounds in *ceps*, *fex*, *pes*, and *corpor*; as, *particeps*, partaking of; *artifex*, *-ĭcis*, cunning, an artiſt; *bipes*, *-pĕdis*, two footed; *bicorpor*, *-ŏris*, two-bodied, &c. All theſe have ſeldom the neut. ſing. and almoſt never the neut. plur. in the nom and acc. To which add *memor*, mindful, which has *memŏri*, and *memŏrum*: alſo *deſes*, *reſes*, *hebes*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *teres*, *concŏlor*, *veſpĭcŏlor*, which likewiſe for the moſt part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *pări*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as, *compăre*, or *-ri*. *Vetus*, old, hath *vetĕra*, and *vetĕrum*; *plus*, more, which is only uſed in the neut. ſing. has *plure*; and in the plural, *plures*, *plura*, or *pluria*, *plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Exſpes*, hopeleſs; and *potis*, *-e*, able, are only uſed in the nominative. *Potis* has alſo ſometimes *potis* in the neuter.

REMARKS.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called abſolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regnante*, not *regnanti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with ſubſtantives neuter for the moſt part have *i*; as, *victrīci ferro*, not *victrīce*.

3. Different words are ſometimes uſed to expreſs the different genders; as, *victor*, victorious, for the maſc. *victrix*, for the fem. *Victrix*, in the plur. has likewiſe the neuter gender; thus, *victrīces*, *victricia*: ſo, *ultor*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Victrix* is alſo neut. in the ſingular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jŭgum*, *limus*, *ſomnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the firſt and ſecond declenſion, or of the third; as, *declīvis*, *-is*, *-e*; and *declīvus*, *-a*, *-um*, ſteep; *imbecillis*, and *imbecillus*, weak; *ſemiſomnis*, and *ſemiſomnus*, half-aſleep; *exanĭmis* and *exanĭmus*, lifeleſs. But ſeveral of them do not admit of this variation; thus we ſay, *magnanimus*, *flexanimus*, *effrēnus*, *leviſomnus*; not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we ſay, *puſillanimis*, *injūgis*, *illīmis*, *inſomnis*, *exſomnis*; not *puſillanimus*, &c. So, *ſemianimis*, *inermis*, *ſublīmis*, *acclīvis*, *declīvis*, *proclīvis*; rarely *ſemianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as, *cordatus*, *morātus*, *cœleſtis*, *adamantĭnus*, *corporeus*, *agreſtis*, *eſſīvus*, &c. from *cor*, *mos*, *cælum*, *adamas*, &c. Thoſe which diminiſh the ſignification of their primitives are called *Diminutives*; as, *miſellus*, *parvŭlus*, *duriuſcŭlus*, &c. Thoſe which ſignify a great deal of a thing are called *Amplificatives*, and end in *ōſus* or *ŭtus*; as, *vinōſus*, *vinŏlentus*, given to much wine; *operōſus*, laborious; *plumbōſus*, full of lead; *nodōſus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpulentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears; *naſūtus*, having a large noſe; *ſiteratus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a ſubſtantive or from another adjective, ſignifying poſſeſſion or property, is called a *Poſſeſſive Adjective*; as, *Scotĭcus*, *paternus*, *herīlis*, *alĭcnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a maſter, another: from *Scotia*, *pater*, *herus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabĭlis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *docilis*, teachable; from *amo*, *capio*, *doceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *ſapiens*, wiſe; *acutus*, ſharp; *diſertus*, eloquent. Of theſe many alſo become ſubſtantives; as, *adoleſcens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *ſerpens*; *advocatus*, *ſponſus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *ſponſa*, *nata*, *ſerta*, ſc. *corona*, a garland; *prætexta*, ſc. *veſtis*; *debĭtum*, *decrĕtum*, *præceptum*, *fatum*, *tectum*, *votum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs are called *Adverbials*; as, *hodiernus*, from *hodie*; *craſtĭnus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*, &c. There

are likewise adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*: *posticus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal, Ordinal, Distributive, and Multiplicative.*

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are:

Unus,	*one.*	Triginta,	*thirty.*
Duo,	*two.*	Quadraginta,	*forty.*
Tres,	*three.*	Quinquaginta,	*fifty.*
Quatuor,	*four.*	Sexaginta,	*sixty.*
Quinque,	*five.*	Septuaginta,	*seventy.*
Sex,	*six.*	Octoginta,	*eighty.*
Septem,	*seven.*	Nonaginta,	*ninety.*
Octo,	*eight.*	Centum,	*a hundred.*
Novem,	*nine.*	Ducenti,	*two hundred.*
Decem,	*ten.*	Trecenti,	*three hundred.*
Undecim,	*eleven.*	Quadringenti,	*four hundred.*
Duodecim,	*twelve.*	Quingenti,	*five hundred.*
Tredecim,	*thirteen.*	Sexcenti,	*six hundred.*
Quatuordecim,	*fourteen.*	Septingenti,	*seven hundred.*
Quindecim,	*fifteen.*	Octingenti,	*eight hundred.*
Sexdecim,	*sixteen.*	Nongenti,	*nine hundred.*
Septendecim,	*seventeen.*	Mille,	*a thousand.*
Octodecim,	*eighteen.*	Duo millia, or bis mille,	*two thousand.*
Novemdecim,	*nineteen.*	Decem millia, or decies mille,	*ten thousand.*
Viginti,	*twenty.*	Viginti millia, or vicies mille,	*twenty thousand.*
Viginti unus, or Unus & viginti,	*twenty-one.*		
Viginti duo, or Duo & viginti,	*twenty-two.*		

The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *una mœnia*, one wall; or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes.

Duo and *tres* are thus declined :

	Plur.			*Plur.*	
N. duo,	duæ,	duo,	*N.* tres,	tres,	tria,
G. duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	*G.* trium,	trium,	trium,
D. duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	*D.* tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
A. duos *or* duo,	duas,	duo,	*A.* tres,	tres,	tria,
V. duo,	duæ,	duo,	*V.* tres,	tres,	tria,
A. duobus,	duabus,	duobus.	*A.* tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

In the ſame manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti, -tæ, -ta; ducentorum, -tarum, -torum*, &c.

Mille is uſed either as a ſubſtantive or adjective; when taken ſubſtantively it is indeclinable in the ſingular number; and in the plural has *millia, millium, millibus*, &c.

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to expreſs more than one thouſand, has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thouſand men; *mille hominum*, of a thouſand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thouſand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a ſubſtantive, we ſay *mille hominum*, a thouſand men; *duo millia hominum, tria millia, quatuor millia, centum* or *centena millia hominum; Decies centena millia*, a million; *Vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers are *primus*, firſt; *ſecundus*, ſecond, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The diſtributive are, *ſingŭli*, one by one; *bini*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following table contains a liſt of the Ordinal and Diſtributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

Ordinal.	*Diſtributive.*	*Numeral Adverbs.*
1 Primus, a, um.	Sĭnguli, æ, a.	Semel, *once.*
2 ſecundus.	bini.	bis, *twice.*
3 tertius.	terni.	ter, *thrice.*
4 quartus.	quaterni.	quater, *four times.*
5 quintus.	quini.	quinquies, &c.
6 ſextus.	ſeni.	ſexies.
7 ſeptimus.	ſeptēni.	ſepties.
8 octavus.	octōni.	octies.
9 nonus.	novēni.	novies.
10 decimus.	deni.	decies.

In ſeveral of theſe, both in Engliſh and Latin, the comparative and ſuperlative ſeem to be formed from ſome other adjective which in the poſitive has fallen into diſuſe: in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magniſſimus*: *moſt*, for *moreſt*; *leaſt*, for *leſſeſt*; *worſt*, for *worſeſt*.

2. Theſe five have their ſuperlative in *līmus*:

Facĭlis, facilior, facillĭmus, *eaſy*.
Gracĭlis, gracilior, gracillimus, *lean*.
Humĭlis, humilior, humillimus, *low*.
Imbecillis, imbecillior, imbecillĭmus, *weak*.
Simĭlis, ſimilior, ſimillĭmus, *like*.

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the ſuperlative differently:

Citer, citerior, citimus, *near*.
Dexter, dexterior, dextimus, *right*.
Siniſter, finiſterior, finiſtĭmus, *left*.
Exter, -erior, extimus, *or* extrēmus, *outward*.
Infĕrus, -ior, infĭmus, *or* imus, *below*.
Intĕrus, interior, intĭmus, *inward*.
Matūrus, -ior, maturrĭmus, *or* maturiſſimus, *ripe*.
Poſtĕrus, poſterior, poſtremus, *behind*.
Supĕrus, -rior, ſuprēmus, *or* ſummus, *high*.
Vetus, veterior, veterrimus, *old*.

4. Compounds in *dĭcus*, *lŏquus*, *fĭcus*, and *volus*, have *entior*, and *entiſſimus*; as, *malĕdĭcus*, railing, *maledicentior*, *maledicentiſſimus*: So *magnĭlŏquus*, one that boaſteth; *benĕfĭcus*, beneficent; *malĕvŏlus*, malevolent; *mirĭfĭcus*, wonderful, *-entior*, *-entiſſimus*, or *mirĭficiſſimus*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their ſignification increaſed, yet either want one of the degrees of compariſon, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not uſed in the poſitive:

Deterior, *worſe*, deterrimus.
Ocior, *ſwifter*, ociſsĭmus.
Prior, *former*, primus.
Propiŏr, *nearer*, proximus, *neareſt* or *next*.
Ulterior, *farther*, ultimus.

2. The following want the comparative:

Inclўtus, inclytiſſimus, *renowned*.
Meritus, meritiſſimus, *deſerving*.
Novus, noviſſimus, *new*.
Nupĕrus, nuperrimus, *late*.
Par, pariſſimus, *equal*.
Sacer, ſacerrimus, *ſacred*.

3. The following want the ſuperlative:

Adoleſcens, adoleſcentior, *young*.
Diuturnus, diuturnior, *laſting*.
Ingens, ingentior, *huge*.
Juvĕnis, junior, *young*.
Opīmus, opimior, *rich*.
Pronus, pronior, *inclined downwards*.
Satur, ſaturior, *full*.
Senex, ſenior, *old*.

To supply the superlative of *juvĕnis* or *adolescens*, we say *minimus natu*, the youngest; and of *senex*, *maximus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ĭlis*, *ālis*, and *bĭlis*, also want the superlative; as, *civĭlis*, *civilior*, civil; *regālis*, *regalior*, regal; *flebĭlis*, *-ior*, lamentable. So *juvenĭlis*, youthful; *exĭlis*, small; *regālis*, like a king, &c.

To these add several others of different terminations: Thus, *arcānus*, *-ior*, secret; *declīvis*, *-ior*, bending downwards; *longinquus*, *-ior*, far off; *propinquus*, *-ior*, near.

Anterior, former; *sequior*, worse; *satior*, better; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all: such are those compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versĭcŏlor*, of divers colours; *pestĭfer*, poisonous: also adjectives in *us* pure, in *ĭvus*, *ĭnus*, *orus*, or *imus*, and diminutives; as, *dubius*, doubtful; *vacuus*, empty; *fugitīvus*, that flieth away; *matutīnus*, early; *canōrus*, shrill; *legitĭmus*, lawful; *tenellus*, somewhat tender; *majusculus*, &c.: together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almus*, gracious; *præcox*, *-ŏcis*, soon *or* early ripe; *mirus*, *egenus*, *lacer*, *memor*, *fospes*, &c

This defect of comparison is supplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime* for the superlative; thus, *egēnus*, needy; *magis egenus*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime egenus*, very *or* most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared.

PRONOUN.

A pronoun is a word which stands *instead of a noun*.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou*, for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, *he* turned *his* arms against *his* country.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*; *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*; *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*.

Three of them are substantives, *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, *I.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
Nom. ego, *I.*	*Nom.* nos, *we.*
Gen. mei, *of me.*	*Gen.* noſtrûm *or* noſtri, *of us.*
Dat. mihi, *to me.*	*Dat.* nobis, *to us.*
Acc. me, *me.*	*Acc.* nos, *us.*
Voc. ———	*Voc.* ———
Abl. me, *with me.*	*Abl.* nobis, *with us.*

Tu, *thou.*

Sing.		*Plur.*
N. tu, *thou,*		*N.* vos, *ye* or *you,*
G. tui, *of thee,*		*G.* veſtrûm *or* -tri, *of you,*
D. tibi, *to thee,*	or *you.*	*D.* vobis, *to you,*
A. te, *thee,*		*A.* vos, *you,*
V. tu, *O thou,*		*V.* vos, *O ye* or *you,*
A. te, *with thee,*		*A.* vobis, *with you.*

Sui, *of himſelf, of herſelf, of itſelf.*

Sing.	*Plur.*
N. ———	*N.* ———
G. ſui, *of himſelf, of herſelf, of itſelf,*	*G.* ſui, *of themſelves,*
D. ſibi, *to himſelf, to herſelf,* &c.	*D.* ſibi, *to themſelves,*
A. ſe, *himſelf,* &c.	*A.* ſe, *themſelves,*
V. ———	*V.* ———
A. ſe, *with himſelf,* &c.	*A.* ſe, *with themſelves.*

Obſ. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, becauſe one cannot call upon himſelf, except as a ſecond perſon: thus we cannot ſay, *O ego,* O I; *O nos,* O we.

Obſ. 2. *Mihi* in the dative is ſometimes by the poets contracted into *mî.*

Obſ. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *noſtrorum* and *noſtrarum*; of *tu*, *veſtrorum* and *veſtrarum*, which were afterwards contracted into *noſtrûm* and *veſtrûm.*

We commonly uſe *noſtrûm* and *veſtrûm* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or ſuperlatives; and *noſtri* and *veſtri* after other words.

The Engliſh ſubſtantive pronouns, *he, ſhe, it,* are expreſſed in Latin by theſe pronominal adjectives, *ille, iſte, hic,* or *is*; as,

Ille, for the maſc. *illa,* for the fem. *illud,* for the neut. that: or, *ille,* he; *illa,* ſhe; *illud,* it, or that; thus,

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	ille,	illa,	illud,	*N.*	illi,	illæ,	illa,
G.	illius,	illius,	illius,	*G.*	illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
D.	illi,	illi,	illi,	*D.*	illis,	illis,	illis,
A.	illum,	illam,	illud,	*A.*	illos,	illas,	illa,
V.	ille,	illa,	illud,	*V.*	illi,	illæ,	illa,
A.	illo,	illâ,	illo.	*A.*	illis,	illis,	illis.

Ipſe, he himſelf, *ipſa*, ſhe herſelf, *ipſum*, itſelf; and *iſte*, *iſta*, *iſtud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipſe* has *ipſum* in the nom. acc. and voc. ſing. neut.

Ipſe is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *ſui*; and has in Latin the ſame force with *ſelf* in Engliſh, when joined with a poſſeſſive pronoun; as, *ego ipſe*, I myſelf.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *this*.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*N.*	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G.	hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	*G.*	horum,	harum,	horum,
D.	huic,	huic,	huic,	*D.*	his,	his,	his,
A.	hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	*A.*	hos,	has,	hæc,
V.	hic,	hæc,	hoc,	*V.*	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
A.	hoc,	hac,	hoc.	*A.*	his,	his,	his.

Is, ea, id; *he*, *ſhe*, *it*; or *that*.

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	is,	ea,	id,	*N.*	ii,	eæ,	ea,
G.	ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	*G.*	eorum,	earum,	eorum,
D.	ei,	ei,	ei,	*D.*	iis, *or* eis, &c.		
A.	eum,	eam,	id,	*A.*	eos,	eas,	ea,
V.	———			*V.*	———		
A.	eo,	eâ,	eo.	*A.*	iis, *or* eis, &c.		

Quis, *quæ*, *quod*, or *quid*? which, what? Or *Quis*? who *or* what man? *quæ*? who? *or* what woman? *quod* or *quid*? what? *or* what thing? thus,

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	quis,	quæ,	quod *or* quid,	*N.*	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.*	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.*	queis *or* quibus, &c.		
A.	quem,	quam,	quod *or* quid,	*A.*	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	———			*V.*	———		
A.	quo,	qua,	quo.	*A.*	queis, *or* quibus, &c.		

Qui, quæ, quod, who, which, that; Or vir *qui*, the man *who* or *that*; fœmina *quæ*, the woman *who* or *that*; negotium *quod*, the thing *which* or *that*: genit. vir *cujus*, the man *whoſe* or *of whom*; mulier *cujus*, the woman *whoſe*, or *of whom*; negotium *cujus*, the thing *of which*, ſeldom *whoſe*, &c. thus,

	Sing.				*Plur.*		
N.	qui,	quæ,	quod,	*N.*	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G.	cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	*G.*	quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D.	cui,	cui,	cui,	*D.*	queis *or* quibus,		&c.
A.	quem,	quam,	quod,	*A.*	quos,	quas,	quæ,
V.	——	——	——	*V.*	——	——	——
A.	quo,	qua,	quo.	*A.*	queis *or* quibus,		&c.

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *ſui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *ſuus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, *-a*, *-um*; and *noſter*, our; *veſter*, your, like *pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*, of the firſt and ſecond declenſion.

Noſtras, of our country; *veſtras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what *or* which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declenſion: gen. *noſtrātis*, dat. *noſtrāti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that ſignify things, which cannot be addreſſed, or called upon, want the vocative.

Meus hath *mi*, and ſometimes *meus*, in the voc. ſing. maſc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *qŭi* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is ſometimes uſed for *quis*: and inſtead of *cujus* the genit. of *quis* we find an adjective pronoun *cujus*, *-a*, *-um*.

Simple pronouns, with reſpect to their ſignification, are divided into the following claſſes:

1. *Demonſtratives*, which point out any perſon or thing preſent, or, as if preſent: *Ego*, *tu*, *hic*, *iſte*, and ſometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipſe*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to ſomething going before: *ille*, *ipſe*, *iſte*, *hic*, *is*, *qui*

3. *Poſſeſſives*, which ſignify poſſeſſion: *meus*, *tuus*, *ſuus*, *noſter*, *veſter*.

4. *Patrials* or *Gentiles*, which ſignify one's country: *noſtras*, *veſtras*, *cujas*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we aſk a queſtion: *quis? cujas?* When they do not aſk a queſtion, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the ſame nature.

6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or repreſent the ſame object to the mind: *ſui*, and *ſuus*.

COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variouſly:

1. With other pronouns; as, *iſthic, iſthæc, iſthoc, iſthuc*, or *iſtuc*. Acc. *Iſthunc, iſthanc, iſthoc*, or *iſthuc*. Abl. *Iſthoc, iſthac, iſthoc*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *iſthæc*, of *iſte* and *hic*. So *illic*, of *ille* and *hic*.

2. With ſome other parts of ſpeech; as, *hujuſmŏdi, cujuſmŏdi*, &c. *mecum, tecum, ſecum, nobiſcum, vobiſcum, quocum* or *quicum* and *quibuſcum: eccum, eccam; eccos, eccas*, and ſometimes *ecca*, in the nom. ſing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With ſome ſyllable added: as, *tute*, of *tu* and *te*, uſed only in the nom. *egomet, tutemet, ſuimet*, through all the caſes, thus, *meimet, tuimet*, &c. of *ego, tu, ſui*, and *met*. Inſtead of *tumet* in the nom. we ſay, *tutemet: hiccine, hæccine*, &c. in all the caſes that end in *e*; of *hic* and *cine: Meapte, tuapte, ſuapte, noſtrapte, veſtrapte*, in the ablat. fem. and ſometimes *meopte, tuopte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte: hicce, hæcce, hocce; hujuſce, hice, hiſce, hoſce*; of *hic* and *ce*: whence *hujuſcemŏdi, ejuſcemŏdi, cujuſcemŏdi*. So *IDEM*, the ſame, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined:

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
N.	ĭdem,	eădem,	ĭdem,	*N.* iidem,	eædem,	eădem,
G.	ejuſdem,	ejuſdem,	ejuſdem,	*G.* eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
D.	eidem,	eidem,	eidem,	*D.* eiſdem *or* iiſdem, &c.		
A.	eundem,	eandem,	idem,	*A.* eoſdem,	eaſdem,	eadem,
V.	idem,	eadem,	idem.	*V.* iidem,	eædem,	eadem,
A.	eōdem,	eâdem,	eōdem.	*A.* eiſdem *or* iiſdem, &c.		

The pronouns which we find moſt frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in compoſition is ſometimes the firſt, ſometimes the laſt, and ſometimes likewiſe the middle part of the word compounded: but *qui* is always the firſt.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put firſt, are, *quiſnam*, who? *quiſpiam, quiſquam*, any one; *quiſque*, every one; *quiſquis*, whoſoever; which are thus declined:

	Nom.			*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quiſnam,	quænam,	quodnam *or* quidnam;		cujuſnam,	cuinam,
Quiſpiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam *or* quidpiam;		cujuſpiam,	cuipiam,
Quiſquam,	quæquam,	quodquam *or* quidquam;		cujuſquam,	cuiquam,
Quiſque,	quæque,	quodque *or* quidque;		cujuſque,	cuique,
Quiſquis,	———	quidquid *or* quicquid;		cujuſcujus,	cuicui.

And ſo in other caſes, according to the ſimple *quis*. But *quiſquis* has not the feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accuſative. *Quiſquam* has alſo *quicquam*, for *quidquam*. Accuſative, *quenquam*, without the feminine. The plural is ſcarcely uſed.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put laſt, have *qua* in the nominative ſing. fem. and in the nominative and accuſative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, ſome; *ecquis*, who? of *ec* and *quis*; alſo *nequis*, *ſiquis*, *numquis*, which for the moſt part are read ſeparately, thus, *ne quis*; *ſi quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined;

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Aliquis, aliqua,	aliquod *or* aliquid,	alicujus,	alicui,
Ecquis, ecqua *or* ecquæ,	ecquod *or* ecquid,	ecujus,	ecui,
Si quis, ſi qua,	ſi quod *or* ſi quid,	ſi cujus,	ſi cui,
Ne quis, ne qua,	ne quod *or* ne quid,	ne cujus,	ne cui.
Num quis, num qua,	num quod *or* num quid,	num cujus,	num cui.

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are *ecquiſnam*, who? *unuſquiſque*, gen. *uniuſcujuſque*, every one. The former is uſed only in the nom. ſing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whoſoever; *quidam*, ſome; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you pleaſe; which are thus declined:

	Nom.	*Gen.*	*Dat.*
Quicunque,	quæcunque, quodcunque,	cujuſcunque,	cuicunque,
Quidam,	quædam, quoddam *or* quiddam,	cujuſdam,	cuidam,
Quilibet,	quælibet, quodlibet *or* quidlibet,	cujuſlibet,	cuilibet,
Quivis,	quævis, quodvis *or* quidvis,	cujuſvis,	cuivis.

Obſ. 1. All theſe compounds have ſeldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obſ. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in comic writers, have ſometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obſ. 3. *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam*, or *quiddam*, in the acc. ſing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. *n* being put inſtead of *m*, for the better ſound.

Obſ. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquod*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are uſed when they agree with a ſubſtantive in the ſame caſe; *quid*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the moſt part have either no ſubſtantive expreſſed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reaſon they are by ſome reckoned ſubſtantives.

VERB.

A verb is a word which expreſſes what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The ſun *ſhines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of ſpeech which ſignifies to be, to do, or to ſuffer.*

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care.*

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall, I walk, walk thou.* Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk, a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor, -ōris*, love, a substantive, and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest, *&c.*

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon, as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo litĕras*, I write letters; but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambŭlo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter Verbs.* Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistĕre*,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Preſent Tenſe.

Conjugat.	*Singular. Perſons.* 1.	2.	3.	*Plural. Perſons.* 1.	2.	3.
1.	-o,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
2.	-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
3.	-o,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-unt.
4.	-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.

Imperfect.

1.	-ābam,	-ābas,	-ābat;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
3.	-ēbam,	-ēbas,	-ēbat;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4.	-iēbam,	-iēbas,	-iēbat;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1.	-ābo,	-ābis,	-ābit;	-ābĭmus,	-ābĭtis,	-ābunt.
2.	-ēbo,	-ēbis,	-ēbit;	-ēbĭmus,	-ēbĭtis,	-ēbunt.
3.	-am,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4.	-iam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iēmus,	-iētis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Preſent Tenſe.

1.	-em,	-es	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2.	-eām,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eātis,	-eant.
3.	-am,	-as,	-at;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4.	-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iāmus,	-iātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

1.	-ārem,	-āres,	-āret;	-ārēmus,	-ārētis,	-ārent.
2.	-ērem,	-ēres,	-ēret;	-ērēmus,	-ērētis,	-ērent.
3.	-ĕrem,	-ĕres,	-ĕret;	-ĕrēmus,	-ĕrētis,	-ĕrent.
4.	-īrem,	-īres,	-īret;	-īrēmus,	-īrētis,	-īrent.

Imperative Mode.

	2	3	2	3
1.	-a *or* -āto,	-āto;	-āte *or* -ātōte,	-anto.
2.	-e *or* -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte *or* -ētōte,	-ento.
3.	-e *or* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *or* -ĭtōte,	-unto.
4.	-i *or* -īto,	-īto;	-īte *or* -ītōte,	-iunto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Preſent Tenſe.

1. -or,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-āmĭni,	-antur.
2. -eor,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
3. -or,	-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-ĭmĭni,	-untur.
4. -ior,	-īris *or* -īre,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īmĭni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

1. -ābar,	-ābāris *or* -ābāre,	-ābātur;	-ābāmur,	-ābāmĭni,	-ābantur.
2. -ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.
3. -ēbar,	-ēbāris *or* -ēbāre,	-ēbātur;	-ēbāmur,	-ēbāmĭni,	-ēbantur.
4. -iēbar,	-iēbāris,	-iēbāre,	-iēbātur;	-iēbāmur,	-iēbāmĭni,	-iēbantur.

Future.

1. -ābor,	-ābĕris *or* -abĕre,	-abĭtur;	-abĭmur,	-abĭmĭni,	-ābuntur.
2. -ēbor,	-ēbĕris *or* -ebĕre,	-ebĭtur;	-ebĭmur,	-ebĭmĭni,	-ēbuntur.
3. -ar,	-ēris *or* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
4. -iar,	-iēris *or* -iēre,	-iētur;	-iēmur,	-iēmĭni,	-ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Preſent Tenſe.

1. -er,	-ĕris *or* -ĕre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-ēmĭni,	-entur.
2. -ear,	-eāris *or* -eāre,	-eātur;	-eāmur,	-eāmĭni	-eantur.
3. -ar,	-āris *or* -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur,	-amĭni,	-antur.
4. -iar,	-iāris *or* -iāre,	-iātur;	-iāmur,	-iāmĭni,	-iantur.

Imperfect.

1. -arer,	-areris *or* -arere,	-aretur;	-aremur,	-aremĭni,	-arentur.
2. -erer,	-ereris *or* -erere,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremĭni,	-erentur.
3. -ĕrer,	-ĕreris *or* -ĕrere,	-ĕretur;	-ĕremur,	-ĕremĭni,	-ĕrentur.
4. -īrer,	-īreris *or* -īrere,	-īretur;	-īremur,	-īremĭni,	-īrentur.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
1.	-āre *or* -ātor,	-ātor;	-āmĭni,	-āntor.
2.	-ēre *or* -ētor,	-ētor;	-ēmĭni,	-ēntor.
3.	-ĕre *or* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-ĭmĭni,	-untor.
4.	-īre *or* -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmĭni,	-iuntor.

Obſerve, Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third perſon plur. of the preſent indic. active, and *iuntur* in the paſſive; and ſo in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam*; *iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenſes are the ſame through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Perf.	-i,	-iſti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-iſtis,	-ērunt *or* -ēre,
Plu.	-ĕram,	-ĕras,	-ĕrat;	-ĕrāmus,	-ĕrātis,	-ĕrant.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perf.	-ĕrim,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.
Plu.	-iſſem,	-iſſes,	-iſſet;	-iſſēmus,	-iſſētis,	-iſſent.
Fut.	-ĕro,	-ĕris,	-ĕrit;	-ĕrĭmus,	-ĕrĭtis,	-ĕrint.

Theſe Tenſes, in the Paſſive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *ſum*, which is alſo uſed to expreſs the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated:

Principal Parts.

Pres. Indic.	*Perf. Indic.*	*Pres. Infin.*	
Sum,	fui,	eſſe,	*To be.*

Indicative Mode.

Preſent Tenſe. *am.*

	Sing.	*Plur.*
Perſons	1. Sum, *I am*,	Sŭmus, *We are*,
	2. Es, *Thou art*, or *you are*.	Eſtis, *Ye* or *you are*,
	3. Eſt, *He is*;	Sunt, *They are*.

Imperfect. *was.*

1. Eram, *I was*,	Erāmus, *We were*,
2. Eras, *Thou waſt*, or *you were*,	Erātis, *Ye were*,
3. Erat, *He was*,	Erant, *They were*.

Perfect. *have been*, or *was.*

1. Fui, *I have been*,	Fuĭmus, *We have been*,
2. Fuiſti, *Thou haſt been*,	Fuiſtis, *Ye have been*,
3. Fuit, *He hath been*;	Fuērunt, *or* -ēre, *They have been*.

Plu-perfect. *had been.*

1. Fuĕram, *I had been,* Fuĕrāmus, *We had been,*
2. Fueras, *Thou hadſt been,* Fueratis, *Ye had been,*
3. Fuerat, *He had been;* Fuerant, *They had been.*

Future. *ſhall* or *will.*

1. Ero, *I ſhall be,* Erĭmus, *We ſhall be,*
2. Eris, *Thou ſhalt be,* Eritis, *Ye ſhall be,*
3. Erit, *He ſhall be;* Erunt, *They ſhall be.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Preſent Tenſe. *may* or *can.*

1. Sim, *I may be,* Sīmus, *We may be,*
2. Sis, *Thou mayeſt be,* Sitis, *Ye may be,*
3. Sit, *He may be;* Sint, *They may be.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *ſhould.*

1. Eſſem, *I might be,* Essēmus, *We might be,*
2. Eſſes, *Thou mighteſt be,* Eſſetis, *Ye might be,*
3. Eſſet, *He might be;* Eſſent, *They might be.*

Perfect. *may have.*

1. Fuĕrim, *I may have been,* Fuĕrĭmus, *We may have been,*
2. Fueris, *Thou mayeſt have been,* Fueritis, *Ye may have been,*
3. Fuerit, *He may have been;* Fuerint, *They may have been.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would,* or *ſhould have;* or *had.*

1. Fuiſſem, *I might have been,* Fuissēmus, *We might have been,*
2. Fuiſſes, *Thou mighteſt have been,* Fuiſſetis, *Ye might have been,*
3. Fuiſſet, *He might have been;* Fuiſſent, *They might have been.*

Future. *ſhall have.*

1. Fuĕro, *I ſhall have been,* Fuĕrĭmus, *We ſhall have been,*
2. Fueris, *Thou ſhalt have been,* Fueritis, *Ye ſhall have been,*
3. Fuerit, *He ſhall have been;* Fuerint, *They ſhall have been.*

Imperative Mode.

2. Es *vel* eſto, *Be thou,* Eſte *vel* eſtōte, *Be ye,*
3. Eſto, *Let him be;* Sunto, *Let them be.*

Infinitive Mode.

Pref. Eſſe, *To be.*
Perf. Fuiſſe, *To have been.*
Fut. Eſſe futurus, -a, -um, *To be about to be.*
Fuiſſe futurus, -a, -um, *To have been about to be.*

Participle.

Future. Fūturus, -a, -um, *About to be.*

Obſ. 1. The perſonal pronouns, which in Engliſh are, for the moſt part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly underſtood; becauſe the ſeveral perſons are ſufficiently diſtinguiſhed from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the perſons themſelves be not expreſſed. The learner however at firſt may be accuſtomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego ſum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, *or* you are; *ille eſt*, he is; *nos ſumus*, we are, *&c.* So *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou loveſt, *or* you love; *ille amat*, he loveth *or* loves; *nos amamus*, we love; *&c.*

Obſ. 2. In the ſecond perſon ſingular in Engliſh, we commonly uſe the plural form, except in ſolemn diſcourſe; as, *tu es*, thou art, *or much oftener*, you are; *tu eras*, thou waſt, *or* you were; *tu ſis*, thou mayſt be, *or* you may be, *&c.* So *tu amas*, thou loveſt, *or* you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedſt, *or* you loved, *&c.*

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts.

Pres. Indic.	*Pres. Infin.*	*Perfect.*	*Supine.*
Amo,	amāre,	amavi,	amatum, *To love.*

Indicative Mode.

Preſent Tenſe. *love, do love,* or *am loving.*

Sing.	1. Am-o,	*I love,*
	2. Am-as,	*Thou loveſt,* or *you love,*
	3. Am-at,	*He loveth,* or *he loves;*
Plur.	1. Am-āmus,	*We love,*
	2. Am-atis,	*Ye* or *you love,*
	3. Am-ant,	*They love.*

Imperfect. *loved, did love,* or *was loving.*

Sing.	1. Am-ābam,	*I loved,*
	2. Am-abas,	*Thou lovedſt,*
	3. Am-abat,	*He loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-abamus,	*We loved,*
	2. Am-abatis,	*Ye* or *you loved,*
	3. Am-abant,	*They loved.*

Perfect. *loved, have loved,* or *did love.*

Sing.	1. Am-āvi,	*I have loved,*
	2. Am-avisti,	*Thou hast loved,*
	3. Am-avit,	*He hath loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-āvĭmus,	*We have loved,*
	2. Am-avistis,	*Ye have loved,*
	3. Am-avērunt, *v.* -avēre,	*They have loved.*

Plu-perfect. *had.*

Sing.	1. Am-āvĕram,	*I had loved,*
	2. Am-averas,	*Thou hadst loved,*
	3. Am-averat,	*He had loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-averamus,	*We had loved,*
	2. Am-averatis,	*Ye had loved,*
	3. Am-averant,	*They had loved.*

Future. *shall* or *will.*

Sing.	1. Am-ābo,	*I shall love,*
	2. Am-abis,	*Thou shalt love,*
	3. Am-abit,	*He shall love;*
Plur.	1. Am-abĭmus,	*We shall love,*
	2. Am-abitis,	*Ye shall love,*
	3. Am-abunt,	*They shall love.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may* or *can.*

Sing.	1. Am-em,	*I may love,*
	2. Am-es,	*Thou mayst love,*
	3. Am-et,	*He may love;*
Plur.	1. Am-ēmus,	*We may love,*
	2. Am-etis,	*Ye may love,*
	3. Am-ent,	*They may love.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *should.*

Sing.	1. Am-ārem,	*I might love,*
	2. Am-ares,	*Thou mightst love,*
	3. Am-aret,	*He might love;*
Plur.	1. Am-aremus,	*We might love,*
	2. Am-aretis,	*Ye might love,*
	3. Am-arent,	*They might love.*

	Perfect.	*may have.*
Sing.	1. Am-āvĕrim,	*I may have loved,*
	2. Am-averis,	*Thou mayſt have loved,*
	3. Am-averit,	*He may have loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-averĭmus,	*We may have loved,*
	2. Am-averitis,	*Ye may have loved,*
	3. Am-averint,	*They may have loved.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would,* or *ſhould have*; or *had.*

Sing.	1. Am-aviſſem,	*I might have loved,*
	2. Am-aviſſes,	*Thou mightſt have loved,*
	3. Am-aviſſet,	*He might have loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-aviſſemus,	*We might have loved,*
	2. Am-aviſſetis,	*Ye might have loved,*
	3. Am-aviſſent,	*They might have loved.*

	Future.	*ſhall have.*
Sing.	1. Am-āvĕro,	*I ſhall have loved,*
	2. Am-averis,	*Thou ſhalt have loved,*
	3. Am-averit,	*He ſhall have loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-averimus,	*We ſhall have loved,*
	2. Am-averitis,	*Ye ſhall have loved,*
	3. Am-averint,	*They ſhall have loved.*

Imperative Mode.

Sing.	2. Am-a, *vel* am-āto,	*Love thou,* or *do thou love,*
	3. Am-ato,	*Let him love;*
Plur.	2. Am-āte, *vel* am-atōte,	*Love ye,* or *do ye love,*
	3. Am-anto,	*Let them love.*

Infinitive Mode.

Pres.	Am-āre,	*To love,*
Perf.	Am-aviſſe,	*To have loved,*
Fut.	Eſſe amaturus, -a, -um,	*To be about to love,*
	Fuiſſe amaturus, -a, -um,	*To have been about to love.*

Participle.

Preſent,	Am-ans,	*Loving.*
Future,	Am-aturus, -a, -um,	*About to love.*

Gerunds.

Nom.	Am-andum,	*Loving,*
Gen.	Am-andi,	*Of loving,*
Dat.	Am-ando,	*To loving,*
Acc.	Am-andum,	*Loving,*
Abl.	Am-ando,	*With loving.*

Supine.

Former. Am-ātum, *To love,*
Latter. Am-atu, *To love,* or *to be loved.*

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Indicative.	*Perfect Participle.*	*Infinitive.*
Amor,	amātus,	amāri, *to be loved.*

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. *am.*

Sing.	1. Am-or,	*I am loved,*
	2. Am-āris, *vel* -āre,	*Thou art loved,*
	3. Am-atur,	*He is loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-amur,	*We are loved,*
	2. Am-amĭni,	*Ye* or *you are loved,*
	3. Am-antur,	*They are loved.*

Imperfect. *was.*

Sing.	1. Am-ābar,	*I was loved,*
	2. Am-abāris *vel*-abāre,	*Thou wast loved,*
	3. Am-abatur,	*He was loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-abamur,	*We were loved,*
	2. Am-abamĭni,	*Ye were loved,*
	3. Am-abantur,	*They were loved.*

Perfect. *am; have been,* or *was.*

Sing.	1. Amatus sum, *vel* fui,	*I have been loved,*
	2. Amatus es, *v.* fuisti,	*Thou hast been loved,*
	3. Amatus est, *v.* fuit,	*He hath been loved;*
Plur.	1. Amati sumus, *v.* fuimus,	*We have been loved,*
	2. Amati estis, *v.* fuistis,	*Ye have been loved,*
	3. Amati sunt, fuērunt, *v.* fuēre,	*They have been loved.*

Plu-perfect. *had been,* or *was.*

Sing.	1. Amatus eram *vel* fueram,	*I had been loved,*
	2. Amatus eras *v.* fueras,	*Thou hadst been loved,*
	3. Amatus erat *v.* fuerat,	*He had been loved;*
Plur.	1. Amati eramus *v.* fueramus,	*We had been loved,*
	2. Amati eratis *v.* fueratis,	*Ye had been loved,*
	3. Amati erant *v.* fuerant,	*They had been loved.*

Future. *shall,* or *will be.*

Sing.	1. Am-ābor,	*I shall be loved,*
	2. Am-abĕris *vel* -abĕre,	*Thou shalt be loved,*
	3. Am-abĭtur,	*He shall be loved;*

Plur.	1. Am-abĭmur,	*We ſhall be loved,*
	2. Am-abimini,	*Ye ſhall be loved,*
	3. Am-abuntur,	*They ſhall be loved.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Preſent Tenſe. *may* or *can be.*

Sing.	1. Am-er,	*I may be loved,*
	2. Am-ĕris *vel* ēre,	*Thou mayſt be loved,*
	3. Am-etur,	*He may be loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-ēmur,	*We may be loved,*
	2. Am-emini,	*Ye may be loved,*
	3. Am-entur,	*They may be loved.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would,* or *ſhould be.*

Sing.	1. Am-ārer,	*I might be loved,*
	2. Am-arēris *vel* arēre,	*Thou mightſt be loved,*
	3. Am-aretur,	*He might be loved;*
Plur.	1. Am-ārēmur,	*We might be loved,*
	2. Am-aremini,	*Ye might be loved,*
	3. Am-arentur,	*They might be loved.*

Perfect. *may have been.*

Sing.	1. Amatus ſim *vel* fuerim,	*I may have been loved,*
	2. Amatus ſis *v.* fueris,	*Thou mayſt have been loved,*
	3. Amatus ſit *v.* fuerit,	*He may have been loved;*
Plur.	1. Amati ſimus *v.* fuerimus,	*We may have been loved,*
	2. Amati ſitis *v.* fueritis,	*Ye may have been loved,*
	3. Amati ſint *v.* fuerint,	*They may have been loved.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would,* or *ſhould have been*; or *had been.*

Sing.	1. Amatus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem,	*I might have been loved,*
	2. Amatus eſſes *v.* fuiſſes,	*Thou mightſt have been loved,*
	3. Amatus eſſet *v.* fuiſſet,	*He might have been loved;*
Plur.	1. Amati eſſemus *v.* fuiſſemus,	*We might have been loved,*
	2. Amati eſſetis *v.* fuiſſetis,	*Ye might have been loved,*
	3. Amati eſſent *v.* fuiſſent,	*They might have been loved.*

Future. *ſhall have been.*

Sing.	1. Amatus fŭĕro,	*I ſhall have been loved,*
	2. Amatus fueris,	*Thou ſhalt have been loved,*
	3. Amatus fuerit,	*He ſhall have been loved;*
Plur.	1. Amati fŭĕrĭmus,	*We ſhall have been loved,*
	2. Amati fueritis,	*Ye ſhall have been loved,*
	3. Amati fuerint,	*They ſhall have been loved.*

Imperative Mode.

Sing. 2. Am-āre *vel* am-ātor, *Be thou loved,*
3. Am-ātor, *Let him be loved;*
Plur. 2. Am-amĭni, *Be ye loved,*
3. Am-antor, *Let them be loved.*

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Am-āre, *To be loved,*
Perf. Esse *v.* fuisse amatus, -a, -um, *To have been loved,*
Fut. Am-ātum iri, *To be about to be loved.*

Participle.

Perf. Am-atus, -a, -um, *Loved,*
Fut. Am-andus, -a, -um, *To be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Dŏceo, dŏcui, doctum, docēre, *To teach.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing. 1.	2.	3.	*Plur.* 1.	2.	3.
Pres.	Doc-eo,	-es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
Imp.	Doc-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebāmus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Doc-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uĭmus,	-uistis,	-uērunt, *v.* -uēre.
Plu.	Doc-uĕram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-uerāmus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut.	Doc-ēbo,	-ebis,	-ebit;	-ebĭmus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres.	Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eāmus,	-eatis,	-eant.
Imp.	Doc-ērem,	-eres,	-eret;	-erēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Perf.	Doc-uĕrim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerĭmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu.	Doc-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissēmus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
Fut.	Doc-uĕro,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerĭmus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
Pres.	Doc-e *vel* -ēto,	-eto;	-ēte *vel* -etote,	-ento.

Infinitive.	*Participles.*	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pres. Doc-ēre.	*Pr.* Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,	1. Doc-tum.
Perf. Doc-uisse.	*Fut.* Doc-tūrus,	Doc-endi,	2. Doc-tu.
Fut. Esse doctūrus, -a, -um.		Doc-endo, &c.	
Fuisse doctūrus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Doceor, doctus, docēri, *To be taught.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
Pr. Doc-eor,	-ēris, *vel* -ēre,	-etur;	-emur,	-emĭni,	-entur.
Im. Doc-ebar,	-ebāris, *vel* -ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.

Perf. Doctus sum *vel* fui, doctus es, *vel* fuisti, &c.
Plu. Doctus eram *v.* fueram, doctus eras *v.* fueras, &c.

Fut. Doc-ebor,	-ebĕris, *vel* -ebere,	-ebĭtur;	-ebĭmur,	-ebimini,	-ebuntur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Doc-ear,	-eāris, *vel* -eare,	-eatur;	-eamur,	-eamĭni,	-eantur.
Im. Doc-erer,	-erēris, *vel* -erēre,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.

Perf. Doctus sim *vel* fuerim, doctus sis *vel* fueris, &c.
Plu. Doctus essem *v.* fuissem, doctus esses *v.* fuisses, &c.
Fut. Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
Pres. Doc-ēre *vel* -ētor,	-etor;	-emĭni,	-entor.

Infinitive.	*Participles.*
Pres. Doc-eri,	*Perf.* Doc-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. Esse *vel* fuisse doctus, -a, -um,	*Fut.* Doc endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Doctum iri.	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, lĕgĕre, *To read.*

Indicative Mode.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Leg-o,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-unt.
Leg-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.

Per. Lĕg-ī,	-ĭſti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-iſtis,	-ērunt, -ēre.
Plu. Leg-ĕram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
Fut. Leg-am,	-es	-et;	-ēmus,	-etis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Leg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
Im. Leg-ĕrem,	-eres,	-eret;	-ĕrēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
Per. Leg-ĕrim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erĭmus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plu. Leg-iſſem,	-iſſes	-iſſet;	-iſſemus,	-iſſetis,	-iſſent.
Fut. Leg-ĕro,	-eris,	-erit;	-erĭmus,	-eritis,	-erint.

Imperative Mode.

1.	3.	2.	3.
Pres. Leg-e *vel* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *vel* -ītōte,	-unto.

Infinitive.	*Participles.*	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pres. Leg-ĕre,	*Pr.* Leg-ens.	Leg-endum.	1. Lec-tum.
Perf. Leg-iſſe,	*Fut.* Lec-tūrus.	Leg-endi.	2. Lec-tu.
Fut. Eſſe lectūrus, -a, -um.		Leg-endo, &c.	
Fuiſſe lecturus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Lĕgor, lectus, lĕgi, *To be read.*

Indicative Mode.

Sing.			*Plur.*		
Pr. Leg-or,	-ĕris, *vel* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-imĭni,	-untor.
Im. Leg-ēbar,	-ebaris, *vel* -ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.

Per. Lectus ſum *vel* fui, lectus es *vel* fuiſti, &c.
Plu. Lectus eram *vel* fueram, lectus eras *vel* fueras, &c.

Fut. Legar,	-ēris, *vel* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emini,	-entur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Leg-ar,	-āris, *vel* -āre,	-atur;	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.
Im. Leg-ĕrer,	-erēris, *vel* -erēre,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.

Perf. Lectus ſim *vel* fuerim, lectus ſis *vel* fueris, &c.
Plu. Lectus eſſem *v.* fuiſſem, lectus eſſes *v.* fuiſſes, &c.
Fut. Lectus fuero, lectus fueris, lectus fuerit, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pres. Leg-ĕre *vel* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-imĭni,	-untor.	

Infinitive.	*Participles.*
Pres. Leg-i.	*Perf.* Lec-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. Esse *v.* fuisse lectus, -a, -um.	*Fut.* Leg-endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Lectum iri.	

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *To hear.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Pr.	Aud-io,	-is,	-it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.
Im.	Aud-iēbam,	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
Per.	Aud-īvi	-iviſti,	-ivit;	ivĭmus,	-iviſtis,	-ivērunt, *v* -ivēre.
Pl.	Aud-ivĕram,	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
Fu.	Audiam,	-ies,	-iet;	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
Im. Aud-īrem,	-ires,	-iret;	-irēmus,	-iretis,	-irent.
Per. Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverĭmus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
Pl. Aud-iviſſem,	-iviſſes,	-iviſſet;	-iviſſemus,	-iviſſetis,	-iviſſent.
Fu. Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
Pres.	Aud-i, *v.* -īto,	-īto;	-īte, *v.* -itōte,	-iunto.

Infinitive.	*Participles.*	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pr. Aud-ire.	*Pr.* Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum.	1. Aud-itum.
Per. Aud-iviſſe.	*Fu.* Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.	2. Aud-itu.
Fut Esse auditurus, -a, um,		Aud-iendo, &c.	
Fuisse auditurus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, audītus, audīri, *To be heard.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
Pr.	Aud-ior,	-īris, *vel* -īre,	-ītur;	-īmur,	-īmĭni,	-iuntur.
Im.	Aud-iēbar,	-iebaris, *vel* -iebare,	-iebatur;	-iebamur,	-iebamini,	-iebantur.

Per. Audītus fum *vel* fui, Auditus es *v.* fuiſti, *&c.*
Auditus eram *v.* fueram, Auditus eras *v.* fueras, *&c.*

Fu. Aud-iar,	-iēris, *vel* -icre,	-ietur;	-iemur,	-iemini,	-ientur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Aud-iar, -iaris, *vel* -iare, -iatur; -iamur, -iamini, -iantur.
Im. Aud-irer, -ireris, *vel* -irere, -iretur; -iremur, -iremini, -irentur.
Perf. Auditus ſim *vel* fuerim, auditus ſis *v.* fueris, &c.
Plu. Auditus eſſem *v.* fuiſſem, auditus eſſes *v.* fuiſſes, &c.
Fut. Auditus fuero, auditus fueris, &c.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
Pr. Aud-īre, *vel* -ītor,	-ītor;	-īmĭni,	-iuntor.

Infinitive. *Participles.*
Pr. Aud-iri. *Per.* Aud-ītus, a, -um.
Per. Eſſe *v* fuiſſe aud-itus,-a,-um. *Fut.* Aud-iendus, -a,-um.
Fu. Aud-ītum iri.

FORMATION of VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the reſt are formed; namely, *o* of the preſent, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the ſupine, and *re* of the infinitive.

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſe*, and *ſſem*.
3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.
4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *a*, *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; as,

AM-O, -em; AM-AVI, -eram, -erim, -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe; AMAT-UM, -u, -urus, -us; AM-ARE, -abam, -abo, -arem, -a, -ans, -andum, di, do; -andus.

DOC-EO, -eam; DOC-UI, -ueram, &c.; DOCT-UM, -u, -urus, -us; DOC-ERE, -ebam, -ebo, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum, di, do, -endus.

LEG-O, -am; LEG-I, -eram, &c; LECT-UM, -u, -urus, -us: LEG-ERE, -ebam, -ĕrem, -e, -ens, -endum, &c.

AUD-IO, -iam; AUD-IVI, -iveram, &c.; AUDIT-UM, -u, -urus, -us; AUD-IRE, -iebam, -irem, -i, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus.——So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, CAP-IO, -iam; CEP-I, -eram, &c.; CAPT-UM, -u, &c.; CAP-ERE, -iebam, -ĕrem, -e, -iens, -iendum, di, do, -iendus.

The paſſive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

A verb is commonly ſaid to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, becauſe from them all the reſt are derived.

The firſt perſon of the Preſent of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, becauſe from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the ſame, are called *Radical* letters; as, *am*, in *am-o*. The reſt are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus*, in *am-abamus*.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ĕre*, or *-īre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting theſe before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenſes.

Signification of the Tenſes in the various Modes.

The tenſes formed from the preſent of the indicative or infinitive ſignify in general the continuance of an action or paſſion, or repreſent them as preſent at ſome particular time: the other tenſes expreſs an action or paſſion completed; but not always ſo abſolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the ſame action or paſſion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, *or* am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love, *or* was loving, &c.

Amavi, I loved, did love, *or* have loved, *that is*, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the paſſive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, *or* in being loved, &c.

Paſt time in the paſſive voice is expreſſed ſeveral different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *ſum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus ſum*, I am *or* have been loved, *or oftener*, I was loved.
Amatus fui, I have been loved, *or* I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was *or* had been loved.
Amatus fueram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus ſim*, I may be *or* may have been loved.
Amatus fuerim, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eſſem*, I might, could, would, *or* ſhould be *or* have been loved.
Amatus fuiſſem, I might, could, would, *or* ſhould have been loved; *or*, I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I ſhall have been loved.

The verb *ſum* is alſo employed to expreſs future time in the indicative mode, both active and paſſive; thus,

Amaturus ſum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, *or* I will love. We chiefly uſe this form, when ſome purpoſe or intention is ſignified.

Amatus ero, I ſhall be loved.

Obſ. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, becauſe we commonly find them ſo placed in the claſſics.

Obſ. 2 In theſe compound tenſes the learner ſhould be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different ſubſtantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus eſt*, he is *or* was loved, when applied to a man; *amata eſt*, ſhe was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum eſt*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amati ſunt*, they were loved, when applied to men, *&c.* The connecting of ſyntax, ſo far as is neceſſary, with the inflexion of nouns and verbs, ſeems to be the moſt proper method of teaching both.

Obſ. 3. The paſt time and participle perfect in Engliſh are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenſes in Latin which they are uſed to expreſs. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a ſenſe different from what it has when put for *amavi*: ſo *amor*, and *amatus ſum*, I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus ſim*, *&c.* In the one, *loved* is taken in a preſent, in the other, in a paſt ſenſe. This ambiguity ariſes from the defective nature of the Engliſh verb.

Obſ. 4. The tenſes of the ſubjunctive mode may be variouſly rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of a ſentence. They are often expreſſed in Engliſh as the ſame tenſes of the indicative, and ſometimes one tenſe apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quaſi intelligant, qualis ſit*, As if they underſtood, what kind of perſon he is. Cic. *In facinus juraſſe puter*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Eloquar an ſilcam?* Shall I ſpeak out, or be ſilent? *Nos vos arguerim, Teucri*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, for *peribo*, Ter. *Hunc tantum dolorem ſe ſperare potui, et perferre potero*: for *potuiſſem* and *poſſem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam?* Why ſhould I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, you ſhould have told me before hand, Ter. *At tu dictis, Albane, maneres*, ought to have ſtood to your word, Virg. *Citius crediderim*, I ſhould ſooner believe, Juv. *Hauſerit enſis*, The ſword would have deſtroyed, Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or ſuppoſe they were angry. *Si id feciſſet*, If he did or ſhould do that, Cic. The ſame promiſcuous uſe of the tenſes ſeems alſo to take place ſometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the ſubjunctive; as, *Animus meminiſſe horret, luctuque refugit*, for *refugit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius*, for *fuiſſet*, Id. *Invidia dilapſa erat*, for *fuiſſet*, Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis?* for *veniſti*, Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Epheſum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu ſi hic ſis, aliter ſentias*, Ter. for, *eſſes* and *ſentires*. *Cato affirmat, ſe vivo, illum non triumphare*, for *triumphaturum eſſe*, Cic. *Perſuadet Caſſico, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*, Cæſ.

Obſ. 5. The future of the ſubjunctive, and alſo of the indicative, is often rendered by the preſent of the ſubjunctive in Engliſh; as, *niſi hoc faciet* or *fecerit*, unleſs he do this. *Ter.*

Obſ. 6. Inſtead of the imperative we often uſe the preſent of the ſubjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *huc venias*, come hither, &c. And

Sto, stĕti, statum, to ſtand. Its compounds have *stĭti, stĭtum*, and oftener *stātum*; as, *præsto, præstĭti, præstĭtum*, or *præstātum*, to excel. So *ex-, ad-, con-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-sto.*

Exc. 2. *Lăvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lăvātum*, to waſh.

Pōto, pōtavi, pōtum, or *pōtātum*, to drink.

Jŭvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help; ſut. part. *juvaturus*. So *adjŭvo.*

Exc. 3. *Cŭbo, cŭbui, cŭbĭtum*, to ly. So *ac-, ex-, oc-, re-cŭbo.* The other compounds inſert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dŏmo, dŏmui, dŏmĭtum, to ſubdue. So *e-, per-dŏmo.*

Sŏno, sŏnui, sŏnĭtum, to ſound. So *aſ-, circum-, con-, diſ-, ex-, in, per-, præ-, re-sŏno.*

Tŏno, tŏnui, tŏnĭtum, to thunder. So *at-, circum-, in-, ſuperin-, re-tŏno.* Horace has *intonātus.*

Vĕto, vĕtui, vĕtĭtum, to forbid.

Crĕpo, crĕpui, crĕpĭtum, to make a noiſe. So *con-, in-, per-, re-crĕpo: diſcrĕpo* has rather *diſcrĕpāvi.*

Exc. 4. *Frĭco, frĭcui, frictum*, to rub. So *aſ-, circum-, con-, de-, eſ-, in-, per-, re-frĭco.* But ſome of theſe have alſo *atum.*

Sĕco, sĕcui, sectum, to cut. So *circum-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, re-, ſub-cĕco.*

Nĕco, necui, or *nĕcavi, nĕcātum*, to kill. So *inter-, enĕco:* but theſe have oftener *ectum; enectum, internectum.*

Mĭco, mĭcui, —— to glitter. So *inter-, pro-mĭco. Emĭco*, has *emĭcui, emĭcātum*; *dimĭco, dimĭcāvi, dimĭcātum*, rarely *dimĭcui*, to fight.

Exc. 5. Theſe three want both pret. and ſup. *lăbo*, to fall or faint; *nexo*, to bind; and *plĭco*, to fold.

Plĭco compounded with a noun, or with the prepoſitions *re, ſub*, has *āvi, ātum*; as, *duplĭco, duplĭcavi, duplĭcatum*, to double. So *multi-, ſup-, re-plĭco.*

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātum*, or *ui* and *ĭtum*; as, *applĭco, applĭcui, applĭcĭtum*, or *āvi, ātum*, to apply. So *im-, com-, plĭco. Explĭco*, to unfold, has commonly *explĭcui, explĭcitum*; but when it ſignifies to explain or interpret, *explĭcāvi, explĭcātum.*

Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the ſecond conjugation have *ui* and *ĭtum*; as, *hăbeo, hăbui, hăbĭtum*, to have.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the ſupine; as, *āreo, ārui*, to be dry.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the ſupine, and are regularly conjugated: *Văleo*, to be in health; and *æqui-, con-, e-, in-, præ-văleo; plăceo*, to pleaſe; and *com-, per-placeo; diſplĭceo*, to diſpleaſe: *Căreo*, to want; *pāreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap-, com pāreo: Jăceo*, to lie; and *ad-, circum-, inter-, ob-, præ-, ſub, ſuper-jăceo: Căleo*, to be warm; and *con-, in-, ob-, per-, re-căleo: nŏceo*, to hurt; *dŏleo*, to be grieved, and *con-, de-, in-, per-dŏleo: Coălesco*, to grow together. *Lŭceo*, which in the active ſignifies, to be valued, to be lawful; and, what is ſingular, in the paſſive, to bid a price. *Lătĕo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the ſupine, *delĭteo, inter-, ſub-lateo*; as likewiſe do thoſe of *tăceo, -cui, -cĭtum*, to be ſilent, *con-, ob-, re-tĭceo*.

Theſe three active verbs likewiſe want the ſupine: *Tĭmeo*, to fear; *tĭleo*, to conceal; *arceo*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the ſupine; as, *exerceo, exercui, exercĭtum*, to exerciſe. So *co-erceo*, to reſtrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

Jŭbeo, juſſi, juſſum, to order. So *fide-jŭbeo*, to bail or be ſurety for.

Sorbeo, ſorbui, ſorptum, to ſup. So *ab-, ex-, re-ſorbeo*. We alſo find *abſorpſi, exſorpſi: Exſorptum, reſorptum*, are not in uſe.

Dŏceo, dŏcui, doctum, to teach. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, ſub-dŏceo*.

Miſceo, miſcui, miſtum, or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad-, com-, im-, inter-, per-, re-miſceo*.

Mulceo, mulſi, mulſum, to ſtroak. So *ad-, circum-, com-, de-, per-, re-mulceo*.

Lūceo, luxi, —— to ſhine. So *al-, circum-, col-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-*, or *pel-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſub-, tranſ-lūceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

Prandeo, prandi, pranſum, to dine.

Vĭdeo, vīdi, vīſum, to ſee. So *in-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-vĭdeo*.

Infinitive.	*Participles.*	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pres. Doc-ēre.	*Pr.* Doc-ens.	Doc-endum,	1. Doc-tum.
Perf. Doc-uisse.	*Fut.* Doc-tūrus,	Doc-endi,	2. Doc-tu.
Fut. Esse docturus, -a, -um.		Doc-endo, &c.	
Fuisse docturus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Doceor, doctus, docēri, *To be taught.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
Pr. Doc-eor,	-ēris, *vel* -ēre,	-etur;	-emur,	-emĭni,	-entur.
Im. Doc-ebar,	-ebāris, *vel* -ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.

Perf. Doctus sum *vel* fui, doctus es, *vel* fuisti, &c.
Plu. Doctus eram *v.* fueram, doctus eras *v.* fueras, &c.

Fut. Doc-ebor,	-ebĕris, *vel* -ebere,	-ebĭtur;	-ebĭmur,	-ebimini,	-ebuntur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Doc-ear,	-eāris, *vel* -eare,	-eatur;	-eamur,	-eamĭni,	-eantur.
Im. Doc-erer,	-erēris, *vel* -erēre,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.

Perf. Doctus sim *vel* fuerim, doctus sis *vel* fueris, &c.
Plu. Doctus essem *v.* fuissem, doctus esses *v.* fuisses, &c.
Fut. Doctus fuero, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.

Imperative Mode.

	2.	3.	2.	3.
Pres.	Doc-ēre *vel* -ētor,	-etor;	-emĭni,	-entor.

Infinitive.	*Participles.*
Pres. Doc-eri,	*Perf.* Doc-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. Esse *vel* fuisse doctus, -a, -um,	*Fut.* Doc endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Doctum iri.	

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, lĕgĕre, *To read.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*	
	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Pr.	Leg-o,	-is,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-ĭtis,	-unt.
Im.	Leg-ēbam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.

Per. Lĕg-ī,	-ĭsti,	-it;	-ĭmus,	-istis,	-ērunt,	-ēre.
Plu. Leg-ĕram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.	
Fut. Leg-am,	-es	-et;	-ēmus,	-etis,	-ent.	

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Leg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.	
Im. Leg-ĕrem,	-eres,	-eret;	-ĕrēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.	
Per. Leg-ĕrim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erĭmus,	-eritis,	-erint.	
Plu. Leg-issem,	-isses	-isset;	-issemus,	-issetis,	-issent.	
Fut. Leg-ĕro,	-eris,	-erit;	-erĭmus,	-eritis,	-erint.	

Imperative Mode.

1.	3.	2.	3.
Pres. Leg-ĕ *vel* -ĭto,	-ĭto;	-ĭte *vel* -ĭtōte,	-unto.

Infinitive.	*Participles.*	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pres. Leg-ĕre,	*Pr.* Leg-ens.	Leg-endum.	1. Lec-tum.
Perf. Leg-isse,	*Fut.* Lec-tūrus.	Leg-endi.	2. Lec-tu.
Fut. Esse lectūrus, -a, -um.		Leg-endo, &c.	
Fuisse lecturus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Lĕgor, lectus, lĕgi, *To be read.*

Indicative Mode.

	Sing.			*Plur.*		
Pr. Leg-or,	-ĕris, *vel* -ĕre,	-ĭtur;	-ĭmur,	-imĭni,	-untor.	
Im. Leg-ēbar,	-ebaris, *vel* -ebare,	-ebatur;	-ebamur,	-ebamini,	-ebantur.	
Per. Lectus sum *vel* fui, lectus es *vel* fuisti, &c.						
Plu. Lectus eram *vel* fueram, lectus eras *vel* fueras, *&c.*						
Fut. Legar,	-ēris, *vel* -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur,	-emini,	-entur.	

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Leg-ar,	-āris, *vel* -āre,	-atur;	-amur,	-amini,	-antur.	
Im. Leg-ĕrer,	-erēris, *vel* -erēre,	-eretur;	-eremur,	-eremini,	-erentur.	
Perf. Lectus sim *vel* fuerim, lectus sis *vel* fueris, &c.						
Plu. Lectus essem *v.* fuissem, lectus esses *v.* fuisses, &c.						
Fut. Lectus fuero, lectus fueris, lectus fuerit, &c.						

Imperative Mode.

Pres. Leg-ĕre *vel* -ĭtor,	-ĭtor;	-imĭni,	-untor.	

assail; *congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*; *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod or beckon with the head; *renuo*, to deny. *Respuo, respui*, to reject, to slight.

BO has *bi, bĭtum*; as,

Bĭbo, bĭbi, bibĭtum, to drink. So *ad-, com-, e-, im-, per-, præ-bĭbo.*

Exc. 1. *Scrībo, scripsi, scriptum*, to write. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, supra-, transf-scrībo.*

Nūbo, nupsi, nuptum, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nūbo.* Instead of *nupsi*, we often find *nupta sum.*

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cubo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accŭbui, accŭbĭtum*, to sit down at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo.*

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi*, to scratch; *lambo, lambi*, to lick. So *ad-, circum-, de-, præ-lambo.*

Glūbo and *deglubo*, to strip, to flay, want both preterite and supine.

CO.

1. *Dīco, dixi, dictum*, to say. So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-dīco.*

Dūco, duxi, ductum, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sub-, tra-*, or *transf-dūco.*

2. *Vinco, vīci, victum*, to overcome. So *con-, de-, e-, per-, re-vinco.*

Parco, pĕperci, parsum, seldom *parsi, parsŭtum*, to spare. So *com-parco*, or *com-perco*, which is seldom used.

Ico, īci, ictum, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum*; as,

Nosco, nōvi, nōtum, to know; fut. part. *noscĭturus.* So Dignosco, *to distinguish*; ignosco, *to pardon*; *also* inter-, per-, præ-nosco. Cresco, *to grow*: Con-, de-, ex-, re-, *and without the supine*, ac-, in-, per-, pro-, suc-, super-cresco.

Quiēſco, *to reſt;* ac-, con-, inter-, re-quieſco. *to vote, to commit; alſo* præ-, re-ſciſco; deſciſco, *to revolt.*

Stiſco, *to ordain;* ad-, *or* aſciſco, *to take to, to aſſociate;* conſciſco, Sueſco, *to be accuſtomed;* aſ-, con-, de-, in-ſueſco.

Exc. 1. Agnoſco, agnōvi, agnĭtum, *to own;* cognoſco, cognōvi, cognĭtum, *to know.* *So* recognoſco, *to review.*

Paſco, pāvi, paſtum, *to feed.* *So* com-, de-paſco.

Exc. 2. *The following verbs want the ſupine.*

Diſco, dĭdĭci, *to learn.* *So* ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, præ-diſco.

Poſco, pŏpoſci, *to demand.* *So* ap-, de-, ex-, re-poſco.

Compeſco, compeſcui, *to ſtop or reſtrain.* *So* diſpeſco, diſpeſcui, *to ſeparate.*

Exc. 3. Gliſco, *to grow;* fatiſco, *to be weary;* and likewiſe inceptive verbs want both preterite and ſupine; as, areſco, *to become dry.* But theſe verbs borrow the preterite and ſupine from their primitives; as, ardeſco, *to grow hot,* arſi, arſum, *from* ardeo.

DO has *di, ſum*; as,

Scando, ſcandi, ſcanſum, to climb; *ĕdo, ēdi, ēſum,* to eat. So,

Aſcendo, *to mount.* Deſcendo, *to go down:* Con-, e-, ex-, in-, tran-ſcendo. Accendo, *to kindle:* In-, ſuc-cendo.

Cūdo, *to forge, to ſtamp or coin;* Ex-, in-, per-, pro-, re-cūdo. Defendo, *to defend.* Offendo, *to ſtrike againſt, to offend.*

Mando, *to chew:* Præ-, re-mando. Prehendo, *to take hold of:* Ap-, com-, de-prehendo.

Exc. 1. *dīvĭdo, dīvīſi, dīvīſum,* to divide.

Rādo, rāſi, rāſum, to ſhave. So *ab-, circum, cor-, de-, ē-, inter-, præ-, ſub-rādo.*

Claudo, clauſi, clauſum, to cloſe. So *circum-, con-, diſ-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, præ-, re-, ſe-clūdo.*

Plaudo, plauſi, plauſum, to clap hands for joy. So *ap-, circum-plaudo:* alſo *com-, diſ-, ex-, ſup-plōdo.*

Lūdo, lūſi, lūſum, to play. So *ab-, al-, col-, de-, e-, il-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-, re-lūdo.*

Trūdo, trūſi, trūſum, to thruſt. So *abſ-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, ob-, pro-, re-trūdo.*

Lædo, læsi, læsum, to hurt. So *al-, col-, e-, il-lido.*

Rōdo, rōsi, rōsum, to gnaw. So *ab-, ar-, circum-, cor-, de-, e-, ob-, per-, præ-rōdo.*

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine: but its compounds have *si, sum*; as, *invādo, invāsi, invāsum*, to invade, or fall upon. So *circum-, e-, super-vādo.*

Cēdo, cessi, cessum, to yield. So *abs-, ac-, ante-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, pro-, re-, retro-, se-, suc-cēdo.*

Exc. 2. *Pando, pandi, passum*, and sometimes *pansum*, to open, to spread. So *dis-, ex-, op-, præ-, re-pando.*

Comĕdo, comēdi, comēsum, or *comestum*, to eat. But *ĕdo* itself and the rest of its compounds have always *ēsum*; as, *ad-, amb-, ex-, per-, sub-, super-ĕdo.*

Fundo, fūdi, fūsum, to pour fourth. So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, inter-, of, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, super-, superin-, transf-fundo.*

Scindo, scĭdi, scissum, to cut. So *af-, circum-, con-, ex-, inter-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, tran-scindo.*

Findo, fĭdi, fissum, to cleave. So *con-, dif-, in-findo.*

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tŭtŭdi, tunsum*, and sometimes *tūsum*, to beat. The compounds have *tŭdi, tūsum*; as, *contundo, contŭdi, contūsum*, to bruise. So *ex-, ob-, per-, re-tundo.*

Cădo, cĕcĭdi, cāsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-, con-, de-, ex-, inter-, pro-, suc-cĭdo*: except *incĭdo, incĭdi, incāsum*, to fall in; *recĭdo, recĭdi, recāsum*, to fall back; and *occĭdo, occĭdi, occāsum*, to fall down.

Cædo, cĕcīdi, cæsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *æ* into *i* long; as, *accīdo, accīdi, accīsum*, to cut about. So *abs-, con-, circum-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, re-, succīdo.*

Tendo, tĕtendi, tensum, or *tentum*, to stretch out. So *at-, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, ob-, præ-, pro-tendo.* But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *ostendo*, which has commonly *ostensum.*

Pēdo, pĕpēdi, peditum, to break wind backwards. So *op-pēdo.*

Pendo, pĕpendi, pensum, to weigh. So *ap-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, re-, sus-pendo.*

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *dĭdi*, and *dĭtum*; as, *abdo*, *abdĭdi*, *abdĭtum*, to hide. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *trādo*: also *decon-*, *recon-do*: and *coad-*, *superad-do*: and *deper-*, *disper-do*. To these add *crēdo*, *crēdĭdi*, *crēdĭtum*, to believe; *vendo*, *vendĭdi*, *vendĭtum*, to sell. *Abscondo*, to hide, has *abscondi*, *abscondĭtum*, rarely *abscondĭdi*.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine; *strīdo*, *strīdi*, to creak; *rŭdo*, *rūdi*, to bray like an ass; and *sīdo*, *sīdi*, to sink down. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sĕdeo*; as, *consīdo*, *consēdi*, *consessum*, to sit down. So *as-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-*, *subsīdo*.

Note. Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished; as, *concĭdo*, *concēdo*, *concīdo*; *consīdo* and *consĭdeo*; *conscindo*, *conscendo*, &c.

GO, GUO has *xi*, *ctum*; as,

Rĕgo, *rexi*, *rectum*, to rule, to govern; *dirĭgo*, *-exi*, *-ectum*, to direct; *arrigo*, & *erigo*, *-exi*, *-ectum*, to raise up; *corrĭgo*, to correct; *porrĭgo*, to stretch out; *subrĭgo*, to raise up. So

Cingo, cinxi, cinctum, *to gird, to surround*: Ac-, dis-, circum-, in-, præ-, re-, suc-cingo.

Fligo, *to dash* or *beat upon*: Af-, con-, in-, fligo: also profligo, *to rout, of the first conj.*

Jungo, *to join*; abjungo, *to separate*: Ad-, con-, de-, dis-, inter-, se-, sub-jungo.

Lingo, *to lick*: de-, e-lingo; and pollingo, *to anoint a dead body.*

Mungo, *to wipe or clean the nose*: emungo, *to wipe, to cheat.*

Plango, *to beat, to lament.*

Stingo, *or* Stinguo, *to dash out, to extinguish*: Di-, ex-, in-, inter-, præ-, re-stinguo.

Tĕgo, *to cover*: Circum-, con-, de-, in-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-tĕgo.

Tingo, *or* Tinguo, *to dip* or *dye*: Con-, in-tingo.

Ungo, *or* unguo, *to anoint*: ex-, in-, per-, super-ungo.

Exc. 1. *Surgo*, to rise, has *surrexi*, *surrectum*. So *as-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-surgo*.

Pergo, *perrexi*, *perrectum*, to go forward.

Stringo, *strinxi*, *strictum*, to bind, to strain, to lop. So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-stringo*.

Fingo, *finxi*, *fictum*, to feign. So *af-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *re-fingo*.

Pingo, *pinxi*, *pictum*, to paint. So *ap-*, *de-pingo*.

Exc. 2. Frango, frēgi, fractum, *to break.* *So* con-, de-, dif-, ef-, in-, per-, præ-, re-, ſuf-fringo.

Ago, ēgi, actum, *to do, to drive.* *So* ab-, ad-, ex-, red-, ſub-, tranſ-, tranſad-igo: *and* circum-, per-ăgo; cōgo, *for* coăgo.

Theſe three compounds of ăgo *want the ſupine:* ſatăgo, ſatēgi, *to be buſy about a thing*; prodĭgo, prodēgi, *to laviſh, or ſpend riotouſly*; dēgo *for* deăgo; dēgi, *to live or dwell.* Ambĭgo, *to doubt, alſo wants the preterite.*

Lĕgo, lēgi, lectum, *to gather, to read.* *So* al-, per-, præ-, re-, ſub-lĕgo: *alſo* col-, de-, e-, recol-, ſe-lĭgo, *which change* e *into* i.

Dilĭgo, *to love, has* dilexi, dilectum. *So* neglĭgo, *to neglect*; *and* intellĭgo, *to underſtand*; *but* negligo *has ſometimes* neglēgi, *Sall. Jug.* 40.

Exc. 2. Tango, tĕtĭgi, tactum, *to touch.* *So* at-, con-, ob-, per-tingo.

Pungo, pŭpŭgi, punctum, *to prick. The compounds have* punxi; *as*, compungo, compunxi, compunctum. *So* diſ-, ex-, inter-pungo: *but* repungo *has* repunxi *or* repŭpŭgi.

Pango, panxi, pactum, *to fix, to drive in, to compoſe*: *or* pĕpĭgi, *which comes from the obſolete verb* păgo, *to bargain, for which we uſe* paciſcor. *The compounds of* pango, *have* pēgi; *as* compingo, compēgi, compactum, *to put together.* *So* im-, op-, ſup-pingo.

Exc. 4. Spargo, ſparſi, ſparſum, *to ſpread.* *So* ad-, circum-, con-, di-, in-, inter-, per-, pro-, re-ſpergo.

Mergo, merſi, merſum, *to dip, or plunge.* *So* de-, e-, im-, ſub-mergo.

Tergo, terſi, terſum, *to wipe or clean.* *So* abſ-, de-, ex-, per-tergo.

Figo, fixi, fixum, *to fix or faſten.* *So* af-, con-, de-, in-, of-, per-, præ, re-, ſuf-, tranſ-figo.

Frīgo, frixi, frixum, *or* frictum, *to fry.*

Exc. 5. Theſe three want the ſupine; *clango, clanxi*, to ſound a trumpet; *ningo* or *ninguo, ninxi*, to ſnow; *ango, anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline or lie towards, wants both preterite and ſupine. So *e-, de-, in-vergo.*

HO, JO.

1. Trăho, traxi, tractum, *to draw.* *So* abſ-, at-, circum-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, per-, pro-, re-, ſub-trăho.

Vĕho, vexi, vectum, *to carry*. *So* a-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, e-, in-, per-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, transvĕho.

2. Mejo, *or* mingo, minxi, mictum, *to make water*. *So* immejo.

LO.

1. Cŏlo, cŏlui, cultum, *to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till*. *So* ac-, circum-, ex-, in-, per-, præ-, re-cŏlo; *and likewise* occŭlo, occului, occultum, to hide.

Consŭlo, consului, consultum, *to advise, to consult*.

Alo, alui, alitum, *or contracted* altum, *to nourish*.

Mŏlo, molui, molitum, *to grind*. *So* com-, e-, per-mŏlo.

The compounds of cello, *which itself is not in use, want the supine; as*, ante-, ex-, præ-cello, -cellui, *to excel*. Percello, *to astonish*, *has* percŭli, perculsum.

Pello, pĕpŭli, pulsum, *to thrust*. *So* ap-, as-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, per-, pro-, re-pello; appŭli, *&c.*

Fallo, fĕfelli, falsum, *to deceive*. *But* refello, refelli, *to confute, wants the supine*.

3. Vello, velli, *or* vulsi, vulsum, *to pull* or *pinch*. *So* a-, con-, e-, inter-, præ, re-vello. *But* de-, di-, per-vello, *have rather* velli.

Sallo, salli, salsum, *to salt*. Psallo, psalli,——*to play on a musical instrument*.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *sustŭli* and *sublātum; Extollo, extŭli, elātum*; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has *ui, ĭtum*; as,

Gĕmo, gĕmui, gemĭtum, *to groan*. *So* ag-, circum-, con-, in-, re-gemo.

Frĕmo, fremui, fremitum, *to rage or roar*. *So* af-, circum-, con-, in., per-fremo.

Vŏmo, evŏmo, -ui, -itum, *to vomit or spew, to cast up*.

Exc. 1. Dēmo, dempsi, demptum, *to take away*.

Prōmo, prompsi, promptum, *to bring out*. *So* de-, exprōmo.

Sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum, *to take*. *So* ab-, as-, con-, de-, in-, præ-, re-, tran-sūmo.

Cōmo, compsi, comptum, *to deck or dress*.

These verbs are also used without the p; *as*, demsi, demtum; sumsi, sumtum, &c.

Exc. 2. Emo, ēmi, emptum, *to buy.* *So* ad-, dir-, ex-, inter-, per-, red-ĭmo *and* co-ĕmo.

Prĕmo, pressi, pressum, *to press.* *So* ap-, com-, de-, ex-, im-, op-, per-, re-, sup-primo.

Trĕmo, trĕmui, *to tremble, wants the supine.* *So* at-, circum-, con-, in-trĕmo.

NO.

1. Pōno, pŏsui, pŏsĭtum, *to put or place.* *So* ap-, ante-, circum-, com-, de-, dis-, ex-, im-, inter-, op-, post-, præ-, pro-, re-, se-, sup-, super-, superim-, transpōno.

Gigno, gĕnui, gĕnĭtum, *to beget.* *So* con-, e-, in-, per-, pro-, re-gigno.

Căno, cĕcĭni, cantum, *to sing.* *But the compounds have* cinui *and* centum; *as,* accĭno, accĭnui, accentum, *to sing in concert.* *So* con-, in-, præ-, suc-cĭno; oc-cĭno *and* occăno; re-cĭno *and* re-căno.

Temno, tempsi, temptum, *to despise.* *So* contemno: *But the preterite and supine of the simple verb are scarcely used.*

2. Sperno, sprēvi, sprētum, *to disdain or slight.* *So* despĕrno.

Sterno, strāvi, strātum, *to lay flat, to strow.* *So* ad-, con-, in-, præ-, pro-, sub-sterno.

Sĭno, sīvi, *or* sii, sĭtum, *to permit.* *So* desĭno, desīvi, *oftener* desii, desĭtum, *to leave off.*

Lĭno, līvi, *or* lēvi, lĭtum, *to anoint or daub.* *So* al-, circum-, col-, de-, il-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, superil-lĭno.

Cerno, crēvi, *seldom* crētum, *to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance.* *So* de-, dis-, ex-, in-, se-cerno.

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *psi* and *ptum*; as, *Carpo, carpsi, carptum,* to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame.——So *con-, de-, dis-, ex-, præ-cerpo.*

Clĕpo, *to steal.*

Rēpo, *to creep:* Ad-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, ir-, intro-, ob-, per-, pro-, sub-rēpo.

Scalpo, *to scratch* or *engrave.* So circum-, ex-scalpo.

Sculpo, *to grave* or *carve.* So ex-, in-sculpo.

Serpo, *to creep as a serpent.*

Exc. 1. *Strĕpo, strĕpui, strĕpĭtum,* to make a noise. So *ad-, circum-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-strĕpo.*

Exc. 2. *Rumpo, rūpi, ruptum,* to break. So *ab-, cor-, di-, e-, inter-, intro-, ir-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-rumpo.*

There are only two ſimple verbs ending in *QUO, viz.*

Cŏquo, coxi, coctum, to boil. So *con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, per-, re-cŏquo.*

Linquo, līqui, —— to leave. The compounds have *lictum;* as, *relinquo, relīqui, relictum,* to forſake. So *de-,* and *dere-linquo.*

RO.

1. *Quæro* makes *quæsīvi, quæsītum,* to ſeek. So *ac-, an-, con-, diſ-, ex-, in-, per-, re-quīro.*

Tĕro, trīvi, trītum, to wear, to bruiſe. So *at-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, ſub-tĕro.*

Verro, verri, verſum, to ſweep, bruſh, or make clean. So *a-, con-, de-, e-, præ-, re-verro.*

Uro, uſſi, uſtum, to burn. So *ad-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, per-, ſub-ūro.*

Gĕro, geſſi, geſtum, to carry. So *ag-, con-, di-, in-, pro-, re-, ſug-gĕro.*

2. *Curro, cŭcurri, curſum,* to run. So *ac-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, præ-, pro-curro,* which ſometimes double the firſt ſyllable, and ſometimes not; as, *accurri,* or *accŭcurri,* &c. *Circum-, re-, ſuc-, tranſ-curro,* hardly ever redouble the firſt ſyllable.

3. *Sĕro, sēvi, sătum,* to ſow. The compounds which ſignify *planting* or *ſowing,* have *sēvi, sĭtum;* as, *conſĕro, conſevi, conſitum,* to plant together. So *aſ-, circum-, de-, diſ-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, ſub-, tranſĕro.*

Sĕro, to knit, had anciently *sĕrui, ſertum,* which its compounds ſtill retain; as, *aſſĕro, aſſerui, aſſertum,* to claim. So *con-, circum-, de-, diſ-, ediſ-, ex-, in-, interſĕro.*

4. *Fŭro,* to be mad, wants both preterite and ſupine.

SO has *sīvi*, *sītum*; as,

Arceſſo, *arceſsīvi*, *arceſsītum*, to call *or* ſend for. So *capeſſo*, to take; *faceſſo*, to do, to go away; *laceſſo*, to provoke.

Exc. 1. *Vīſo*, *vīſi*, —— to go to ſee, to viſit. So *in-*, *re-viſo*. *Inceſſo*, *inceſſi*, —— to attack, to ſeize.

Exc. 2. *Depſo*, *depſui*, *depſtum*, to knead. So *con-*, *per-depſo*.

Pinſo, *pinſui*, or *pinſi*, *pinſum*, *piſtum*, or *pinsĭtum*, to bake.

TO.

1. *Flecto* has *flexi*, *flexum*, to bow. So *circum-*, *de-*, *in-*, *re-*, *retro-flecto*.

Plecto, *plexi*, and *plexui*, *plexum*, to plait. So *implecto*.

Necto, *nexi*, and *nexui*, *nexum*, to tie or knit. So *an-*, *con-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *ſub-necto*.

Pecto, *pexi*, and *pexui*, *pexum*, to dreſs or comb. So *de-*, *ex-*, *re-pecto*.

2. *Mĕto*, *meſſui*, *meſſum*, to reap, mow, or cut down. So *de-*, *e-*, *præ-mĕto*.

3. *Pĕto*, *pĕtīvi*, *pĕtītum*, to ſeek, to purſue. So *ap-*, *com-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *op-*, *re-*, *ſup-pĕto*.

Mitto, *mīſi*, *miſſum*, to ſend. So *a-*, *ad-*, *com-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *o-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſub-*, *ſuper-*, *tranſ-mitto*.

Verto, *verti*, *verſum*, to turn. So *a-*, *ad-*, *animad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *præter-*, *re-*, *ſub-*, *tranſ-verto*.

Sterto, *ſtertui*, —— to ſnore. So *de-ſterto*.

4. *Siſto*, an active verb, to ſtop, has *ſtĭti*, *ſtătum*: but *ſiſto*, a neuter verb, to ſtand ſtill, has *ſtĕti*, *ſtatum*, like *ſto*. The compounds have *ſtĭti*, and *ſtĭtum*; as, *aſſiſto*, *aſtĭti*, *aſtĭtum*, to ſtand by. So *ab-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-*, *ſub-ſiſto*. But the compounds are ſeldom uſed in the ſupine.

VO, XO.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vīvo, vixi, victum*, to live. So *ad-, con-, per-, pro-, re-, ſuper-vīvo.*

Solvo, ſolvi, ſolūtum, to looſe. So *ab-, diſ-, ex-, per-, re-ſolvo.*

Volvo, volvi, volūtum, to roll. So *ad-, circum-, con-, de-, e-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, ſub-volvo.*

2. *Texo*, the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*, has *texui, textum*, to weave. So *at-, circum-, con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſub-texo.*

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *īvi*, and the ſupine in *ītum*; as,

Mūnio, mūnīvi, mūnitum, to fortify.

Exc. 1. *Singultio, ſingultīvi, ſingultum*, to ſob.

Sepĕlio, ſepĕlivi, ſepultum, to bury.

Vĕnio, vēni, ventum, to come. So *ad-, ante-, circum-, con-, contra-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, intro-, ob-, per-, poſt-, præ-, re-, ſub-, ſuper-vĕnio.*

Vēneo, vēnii, —— to be ſold.

Sălio, săhui, and *săli, ſaltum*, to leap. The compounds have commonly *sĭlui*, ſometimes *ſilii* or *sĭlīvi*, and *ſultum*; as, *transĭlio, transĭlui, transĭlii*, and *transĭlivi, tranſultum*, to leap over. So *ab-, aſ-, circum-, con-, de-, diſ-, ex-, in-, re-, ſub-, ſuper-sĭlio.*

Exc. 2. *Amĭcio* has *amĭcui, amictum*, ſeldom *amixi*, to cover or clothe.

Vincio, vinxi, vinctum, to tie. So *circum-, de-, e-, revincio.*

Sancio, ſanxi, ſanctum; and *ſancīvi, ſancītum*, to eſtabliſh or ratify.

Exc. 3. *Cambio, campſi, campſum*, to change money.

In the Second Conjugation,

Mereor, *to deserve.*
Polliceor, *to promise.*
Tueor, *to defend.*
Liceor, *to bid at an auction.*

In the Third Conjugation,

Amplector, complector, *to embrace.*
Revertor, *to return.*

In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, *to sooth.*
Partior, *to divide.*
Mentior, *to lie.*
Sortior, *to draw* or *cast lots.*
Molior, *to attempt something difficult.*
Largior, *to give liberally.*

There are no exceptions in the *First Conjugation.*

EXCEPTIONS *in the Second Conjugation.*

Reor, rătus, to think.

Misĕreor, miſertus, or not contracted *miſerĭtus,* to pity.

Fătеor, faſſus, to confeſs. The compounds of *fătеor* have *feſſus;* as, *profĭteor, profeſſus,* to profeſs. So *confĭteor,* to confeſs, to own *or* acknowledge.

EXCEPTIONS *in the Third Conjugation.*

Lābor, lapſus, to ſlide. So *al-, col-, de-, di-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, præter-, pro-, re-, ſub-, ſubter-, ſuper-, tranſ-lābor.*

Ulciſcor, ultus, to revenge.

Utor, ūſus, to uſe. So *ab-, de-ūter.*

Lŏquor, lŏquūtus, or *locūtus,* to ſpeak. So *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-lŏquor.*

Sequor-, sĕquutus, or *sĕcutus,* to follow. So *aſ-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, ſub-sĕquor.*

Quĕror, queſtus, to complain. So *con-, inter-, præquĕror.*

Nĭtor, nīſus or *nixus,* to endeavour, to lean upon. So *an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, ſub-nĭtor:* but the compounds have oftener *nixus.*

Păciſcor, pactus, to bargain. So *de-paciſcor.*

Grădior, greſſus, to go. So *ag-, anie-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, præ-, præter-, pro-, re-, retro-, ſug-, ſuper-tranſ-grĕdior.*

Proficiſcor, profectus, to go a journey.

Nanciſcor, nactus, to get.

Pătior, passus, to suffer. So *per-pĕtior.*

Apiscor, aptus, to get. So *adipiscor, adeptus*, and *indipiscor, indeptus.*

Comminiscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, fruĭtus, or *fructus*, to enjoy. So *per-fruor.*

Obliviscor, oblītus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experrectus, to awake.

Mŏrior, mortuus, to die. So *com-, de-, e-, im-, inter-, præ mŏrior.*

Nascor, nātus, to be born. So *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-nascor.*

Orior, ortus, ŏrīri, to rise. So *ab-, ad-, co-, ex-, ob-, sub-ŏrior.*

The three last form the future participle in *ĭturus*; thus, *mŏrĭturus, nascĭturus, ŏrĭturus.*

EXCEPTIONS *in the Fourth Conjugation.*

Mētior, mensus, *to measure. So* ad-, com-, di-, e-, præ-, re-mētior.

Ordior, orsus, *to begin. So* ex-, red ordior.

Expĕrior, expertus, *to try.*

Oppĕrior, oppertus, *to wait or tarry for one.*

The following verbs want the participle perfect.

Vescor, vesci, *to feed.*	Prævertor, præverti, *to get before, to outrun.*
Līquor, liqui, *to melt or be dissolved.*	
Mĕdeor, mederi, *to heal.*	Diffĭteor, diffĭteri, *to deny.*
Reminiscor, reminisci, *to remember.*	Divertor, diverti, *to turn aside, to take lodging.*
Irascor, irasci, *to be angry.*	
Ringor, ringi, *to grin like a dog.*	Defĕtiscor, defĕtisci, *to be weary, or faint.*

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular.*

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum, eo, queo, vŏlo, nōlo, mālo, fĕro*, and *fio*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six; *nolo* and *malo* being compounds of *volo.*

Sum has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, præ-, ob-, sub-, super-sum*; and *ipsum*, which wants the preterite.

Prosum, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*; as,
Ind. Pr. Pro-sum, prod-es, prod-est; pro-sŭmus, &c.
Im. Prod-ĕram, prod-eras, prod-erat; prod-eramus, &c.
Sub. Im Prod-essem, prod-esses, prod-esset; prod-essemus, &c.
Imperat. Prod-esto, prod-este. *Infinit. Pres.* Prod-esse.

Possum is compounded of *pŏtis*, able, and *sum*; and is thus conjugated:

Possum, pŏtui, posse, *To be able.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Possum,	potes,	potest;	possŭmus,	potestis,	possunt.	
Im. Pot-ĕram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.	
Per. Pot-ui,	-uisti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uistis,	-uerunt, -uere.	
Plu. Pot-uĕram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.	
Fut. Pot-ĕro,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erunt.	

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Pos-sim,	-sis,	-sit;	-sīmus,	-sitis,	-sint.
Im. Pos-sem,	-ses,	-set;	-semus,	-setis,	-sent.
Per. Pot-uĕrim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu. Pot-uissem,	-uisses,	-uisset;	-uissemus,	-uissetis,	-uissent.
Fut. Pot-uĕro,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Posse. *Per.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

Eo, īvi, ĭtum, īre, *To go.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Eo,	is,	it;	īmus,	ītis,	eunt.
Imp. Ibam,	ibas,	ibat;	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
Per. Ivi,	isti,	ivit;	ivimus,	istis,	iverunt, ivere.
Plu. Iveram,	iveras,	iverat;	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
Fut. Ibo,	ibis,	ibit;	ibimus,	ibitis.	ibunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Eam,	eas,	eat;	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
Im. Irem,	ires,	iret;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
Per. Iverim,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
Plu. Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset;	ivissemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
Fut. Iuero,	iveris,	iverit;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

Imperative.				*Infinitive.*
Pres. I, Ito,	ito;	ite, itote,	eunto.	*Pres.* Ire. *Perf.* Iviſſe. Eſſe iturus, a, um. Fuiſſe iturus.

Participles.	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pr. Iens, *Gen.* euntis.	Eundum.	1. Itum.
Fut. Iturus, -a, -um.	Eundi.	2. Itu.
	Eundo, &c.	

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the ſame manner; *ad-, ab-, ex-, ob-, red-, ſub-, per-, co, in-, præ, ante-, prod-eo:* So likewiſe *veneo, -ii,* (of *venum* a ſale, and *eo*) to be ſold. But *ambio,* to ſurround, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

In the tenſes formed from the perfect, the compounds are uſually contracted; as, *adii, adiiſti* or *adiſti, adiĕram, adiĕrim, &c.*

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in Engliſh under a paſſive form; thus, *it,* he is going; *ĭvit,* he is gone; *ĭvĕrat,* he was gone; *iverit,* he may be gone, *or* ſhall be gone. So *vĕnit,* he is coming; *vĕnit,* he is come; *vĕnĕrat,* he was come, &c. In the paſſive voice theſe verbs for the moſt part are only uſed impersonally; as, *itur ab illo,* he is going; *ventum eſt ab illis,* they are come. We find ſome of the compounds of *eo,* however, uſed perſonally; as *pericula adeuntur,* are undergone, Cic. *Libri ſibyllini aditi ſunt,* were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedibus tranſiri poteſt.* Cæſ. *Inimicitiæ ſubeantur.* Cic.

QUEO, I can, and *NEQUEO,* I cannot, are conjugated the ſame way as *eo;* only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are ſeldom uſed.

Vŏlo, vŏlui, velle, *To will,* or *to be willing.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Vol-o,	vis,	vult;	volŭmus,	-vultis,	-volunt.
Im. Vol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per. Vol-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt, -uere.
Pl. Vol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fu. Vol-am,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Velim,	velis,	velit;	velīmus,	velitis,	velint.
Im. Vellem,	velles,	vellet;	vellēmus,	velletis,	vellent.
Per. Vol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu. Voluiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet;	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut. Vol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive. *Participle.*

Pres. Velle. *Perf.* Voluiſſe. *Pres.* Volens.

The reſt not uſed.

Nōlo, nolui, nolle. *To be unwilling.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Nōlo,	non-vis,	non-vult;	nolumus,	non-vultis,	nolunt.
Im. Nol-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per. Nol-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt, -uere.
Plu. Nol-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut. Nolam,	-noles,	-nolet;	nolemus,	noletis,	-nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Nolim,	nolis,	nolit;	nolīmus,	nolitis,	nolint.
Im. Nollem,	nolles,	nollet;	nollemus,	nolletis,	nollent.
Per. Nol-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu. Nol-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet;	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut. Nol-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Imperative. *Infinitive.* *Participle.*

Pr. { Noli, / Nolīto; } { nolite, / nolitote. } *Pr.* Nolle. *Pr.* Nolens.
Per. Noluiſſe. *The reſt wanting.*

Mālo, mălui, malle, *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Mal-o,	mavis,	mavult;	malūmus,	mavultis,	malunt.
Im. Mal-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per. Mal-ui,	-uiſti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uiſtis,	-uerunt, -uere.
Plu. Mal-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.
Fut. Mal-am,	-es,	-et, &c.	*This is ſcarcely in uſe.*		

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Malim,	malis,	malit;	malīmus,	malitis,	malint.
Im. Mallem,	malles,	mallet;	mallemus,	malletis,	mallent.
Per. Mal-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu. Mal-uiſſem,	-uiſſes,	-uiſſet;	-uiſſemus,	-uiſſetis,	-uiſſent.
Fut. Mal-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Malle. *Perf.* Maluiſſe. *The reſt not uſed.*

Fĕro, tŭli, lātum, ferre, *To bring* or *ſuffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fĕro,	fers,	fert;	ferĭmus,	fertis,	ferunt.
Im. Fer-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per. Tuli,	tuliſti,	tulit;	tulimus,	tuliſtis,	tulerunt, -ēre.
Plu. Tul-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
Fut. Feram,	feres,	feret;	feremus,	feretis,	ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Feram,	feras,	ferat;	feramus,	feratis,	ferant.
Im. Ferrem,	ferres,	ferret;	ferremus,	ferretis,	ferrent.
Per. Tul-erim,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
Plu. Tul-iſſem,	-iſſes,	-iſſet;	-iſſemus,	-iſſetis,	-iſſent.
Fut. Tul-ero,	-eris,	-erit;	-erimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

Imperative.

Pr. Fer, Ferto: ferte, fertote, ferunto.

Infinitive.

Pr. Ferre.
Per. Tuliſſe.
Fut. Eſſe laturus, a, um.
Fuiſſe laturus, a, um.

Participles.	*Gerunds.*	*Supines.*
Pres. Ferens.	Ferendum.	1. Latum.
Fut. Laturus, -a, -um.	Ferendi.	2. Latu.
	Ferendo, &c.	

PASSIVE VOICE.

Feror, latus, ferri, *To be brought.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Feror, ferris, *vel* ferre, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.

Im. Fer-ebar, -ebaris, *vel* -ebare, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.

Per. Latus ſum, &c. latus fui, &c.

Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.

Fut. Ferar, ferēris, *vel* ferēre, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Ferar, feraris, *v.* ferare, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.
Im. Ferrer, ferreris, *v.* ferrere, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
Per. Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.
Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissem, &c.
Fut. Latus fuero, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pref. Ferre *vel* fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.

Infinitive. *Participles.*

Pref. Ferri. *Perf.* Latus, -a, -um.
Perf. Esse *vel* fuisse latus, -a, -um. *Fut.* Ferendus, -a, -um.
Fut. Latum iri.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fĕro*; as, *offĕro, attŭli, allatum*; *aufĕro, abstŭli, ablatum*; *differo, distuli, dilatum*; *confero, contuli, collatum*: *infero, intuli, illatum*; *offero, obtuli, oblatum*; *effero, extuli, elatum*. So *circum-, per-, transf-, de-, pro-, ante-, præ-fĕro*. In some writers we find *adfero, adtŭli, adlatum*; *conlatum, inlatum, obfero*, &c. for *affero*, &c.

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo*, for *magis volo*; *fero, fers, fert*, &c. for *feris, ferit*, &c. *Fevor, ferris*, v. *ferre, fertur*; for *ferĕris*, &c.

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco, dūco*, and *făcio* are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dīce, dūce, făce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

Fīo, factus, fĭĕri, *To be made* or, *done, to become*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fio, fis, fit; fimus, fitis, fiunt.
Im. Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.
Per Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.
Plu Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.
Fut. Fiam, fies, fiet; fiemus, fietis, fient.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Fiam, fias, fiat; fiamus, fiatis, fiant.
Im. Fĭĕrem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.
Per. Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.
Plu. Factus essem, &c. factus fuissem, &c.
Fut. Factus fuero, &c.

Imperative.				*Infinitive.*
Pr.	Fi, Fito:	fite, fitote,	funto.	*Pr.* Fieri. *Per.* Esse v. fuisse factus, a, um. *Fut.* Factum iri.

Participles.				*Supine.*
Per. Factus,	-a,	-um.		Factu.
Fut. Faciendus,	-a,	-um.		

The compounds of *făcio*, which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive, and *fac* in the imperative active; as, *calefacio*, to warm, *calefio*, *calefac*; but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative; as, *conficio*, *confice*; *conficior*, *confectus*, *confici*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confieri*; *defit*, it is wanting; *infit*, he begins.

To Irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER-PASSIVE *Verbs*, which, like *fio*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sŏleo*, *solĭtus*, *solēre*, to use; *audeo*, *ausus*, *audēre*, to dare; *gaudeo*, *gavīsus*, *gaudēre*, to rejoice; *fīdo*, *fīsus*, *fidĕre*, to trust: So *confīdo*, to trust; and *diffīdo*, to distrust; which also have *confīdi* & *diffīdi*. Some add *mœreo*, *mœstus*, *mœrere*, to be sad; but *mœstus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *juratus sum* and *cænatus sum*, for *juravi* and *cænavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification; as, *vapŭlo*, *-avi*, *-atum*, to be beaten *or* whipped; *venĕo*, to be sold; *exŭlo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *odi*, *cœpi*, and *memĭni*, are only used in the preterite tenses; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs*; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification: thus,

Odi, I hate, or have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *odissem*, *odero*, *odisse*. Participles, *osus*, *osurus*: *exosus*, *perosus*.

Cœpi, I begin *or* have begun, *cœperam*, *-erim*, *-issem*, *-ero*, *-isse*. Supine *cœptu*. Participles *cœptus*, *cœpturus*.

Memĭni, I remember, or have remembered, *memineram*, *-erim*, *-issem*, *-ero*, *-isse*: Imperative, *memento*, *mementote*.

Instead of *odi*, we sometimes say *osus sum*; and always *exosus*, *perosus sum*, and not *exodi*, *perodi*. We say *opus cœpit fieri*, or *cœptum est*.

To these some add *nŏvi*, because it frequently hath the signification of the present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nosco*, which is complete.

Furo, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus, we say, *daris*, *datur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say, *inquam*, I say, *forem*, I should be; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, *or* I will do it; *ave* and *salve*, save you, hail, good morrow; *cedo*, tell thou, *or* give me; *quæso*, I pray.

Ind. Pr. Aio,	ais,	ait:	——	——	aiunt.
Im. Aiebam,	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Per. ——	aisti,	——	——	——	——
Sub. Per. ——	aias,	aiat:	——	aiatis,	aiant.
Imperat. Ai.			*Particip. Pres.* Aiens.		
Ind. Pr. Inquam,	-quis,	-quit:	-quĭmus,	-quĭtis,	-quiunt.
Im. ——	——	inquiebat:	——	——	inquiebant.
Per. ——	inquisti,	——	——	——	——
Fut. ——	inquies,	inquiet:	——	——	——
Imperat. Inque, inquĭto.			*Particip. Pr.* Inquiens.		
Sub. Im. Plu.	Fŏrem,	fores,	foret:	foremus,	foretis,	forent.

Inf. Fore, *to be hereafter*, or *to be about to be*, the same with *esse futurus*.

Sub. Pr. Ausim,	ausis,	ausit:	——	——	——
Per. Faxim,	faxis,	faxit:	——	——	faxint.
Fut. Faxo,	faxis,	faxit:	——	faxĭtis,	faxint.

Note. *Faxim* and *faxo* are used instead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

Imper. Ave *vel* avēte; *plur.* avēte *vel* avetote. *Inf.* avere.
—— Salve *v.* salveto; — salvete *v.* salvetote. — salvere.
Indic. Fut. ——Salvebis.
Imperat. second pers. sing. Cedo, *plur.* cedite.
Indic. Pres. first pers. sing. Quæso, *plur.* quæsŭmus.

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets; as, *infit*, he begins; *defit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis*, for *si vis*; *sultis*, for *si vultis*; *sodes*, for *si audes*; *capsis*, for *capse si vis*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any *person* or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *delectat*, it delights; *decet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *evenit*, it happens:

		1st *Conj.*	2d *Conj.*	3d *Conj.*	4th *Conj.*
Ind.	*Pr.*	Delectat,	Decet,	Contingit,	Evenit,
	Im.	Delectabat,	Decebat,	Contingebat,	Eveniebat,
	Per.	Delectavit,	Decuit,	Contigit,	Evenit,
	Plu.	Delectaverat,	Decuerat,	Contigerat,	Evenerat,
	Fut.	Delectabit,	Decebit,	Continget.	Eveniet.
Sub.	*Pr.*	Delectet,	Deceat,	Contingat,	Eveniat,
	Im.	Delectaret,	Decēret,	Contingĕret,	Eveniret,
	Per.	Delectaverit,	Decuerit,	Contigerit,	Evenerit,
	Plu.	Delectavisset,	Decuisset,	Contigisset,	Evenisset,
	Fut.	Delectaverit,	Decuerit.	Contigerit.	Evenerit.
Inf.	*Pr.*	Delectāre,	Decēre,	Contingĕre,	Evenīre,
	Per.	Delectavisse.	Decuisse.	Contigisse.	Evenisse.

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs, which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *favētur*, *currītur*, *venītur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

Ind.	*Pr.*	Pugnātur,	Favētur,	Currĭtur,	Venītur,
	Im.	Pugnabatur,	Favebatur,	Currebatur,	Veniebatur,
	Per.	Pugnatum est,	Fautum est,	Cursum est,	Ventum est,
	Plu.	Pugnatum erat,	Fautum erat,	Cursum erat,	Ventum erat,
	Fut.	Pugnabitur.	Favebitur.	Curretur.	Venietur.
Sub.	*Pr.*	Pugnetur,	Faveatur,	Curratur,	Veniatur,
	Im.	Pugnaretur,	Faveretur,	Curreretur,	Veniretur,
	Per.	Pugnatum sit,	Fautum sit,	Cursum sit,	Ventum sit,
	Plu.	Pugnatum esset,	Fautum esset,	Cursum esset,	Ventum esset,
	Fut.	Pugnatum fuerit.	Fautum fuerit.	Cursum fuerit.	Ventum fuerit.
Inf.	*Pr.*	Pugnari,	Faveri,	Curri,	Venīri,
		Pugnatum esse,	Fautum esse,	Cursum esse,	Ventum esse,
		Pugnatum iri.	Fautum iri.	Cursum iri.	Ventum iri.

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *delectet*, let it delight, &c.; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pœnitens*, *-dum*, *dus*, &c. *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum*, Cic. In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real Impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dĕcet*, it becomes; *pœnĭtet*, it repents; *oportet*, it behoves; *misĕret*, it pities; *pĭget*, it irketh; *pŭdet*, it shameth; *lĭcet*, it is lawful; *lĭbet* or *lŭbet*, it pleaseth; *tædet*, it wearieth; *lĭquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *miseret*, *miseruit*, or *misertum est*; *piget*, *piguit*, or *pigĭtum est*; *pudet*, *puduit*, or *puditum est*; *licet*, *licuit*, or *licitum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libitum est*; *tædet*, *tæduit*, *tæsum est*, oftener *pertæsum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations:

In the first, *Jŭvat*, *spectat*, *văcat*, *stat*, *constat*, *præstat*, *restat*, &c.

In the second, *Apparĕt*, *attinet*, *pertinet*, *debet*, *dŏlet*, *nŏcet*, *lătet*, *lĭquet*, *pătet*, *placet*, *displĭcet*, *sĕdet*, *sŏlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accĭdit*, *incĭpit*, *desĭnit*, *sufficit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Convĕnit*, *expĕdit*, &c.

Also irregular verbs, *Est*, *obest*, *prodest*, *potest*, *interest*, *superest*; *fit*, *præterĭit*, *nequit*, *subit*, *confert*, *refert*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgŭrat*, *fulmĭnat*, *tŏnat*, *grandĭnat*, *gĕlat*, *pluit*, *ningit*, *lucescit*, *advesperascit*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placet mihi*, *tibi*, *illi*, it pleases me, thee, him; *or* I please, thou pleasest, &c. *pugnatur a me*, *a te*, *ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So *Curritur*, *venitur a me*, *a te*, &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favetur tibi a me*, Thou art favored by me, *or* I favor thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus we can say, *ego placeo tibi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si places audire*, if you please to hear, but *si placet tibi audire*. So, we can say, *multa homini contingunt*, many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contĭgi esse domi*, we must either say, *me contigit esse domi*, or *mihi contigit esse domi*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called Redundant Verbs, which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *assentio* and *assentior*, to agree; *fabrĭco* and *fabrĭcor*, to frame; *mereo* and *mereor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *luo*, *lavas*, *lavāre*: and *lavo*, *luvis*, *lavĕre*, to wash.

2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as,
Ferveo, ferves, *and* fervo, fervis, *to boil.*
Fulgeo, fulges, *and* fulgo, fulgis, *to shine.*
Strīdeo, strides, *and* strīdo, stridis, *to make a noise.*
Tueor, tuēris, *and* tuor, tuĕris, *to defend.*
To these add *tergeo, terges;* and *tergo, tergis,* to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,
Fodio, fodis, fodĕre, *and* fodio, fodis, fodīre, *to dig.*
Sallo, sallis, sallĕre, *and* sallio, sallis, sallīre, *to salt.*
Arcesso, -is, arcessĕre, *and* arcessio, arcessīre, *to send for.*
Morior, morĕris, mori, *and* morior, morīris, morīri, *to die.*
So Orior, orĕris, *and* orior, orīris, oriri, *to rise.*
Potior, potĕris, *and* potior, potīris, potīri, *to enjoy.*
There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, *cieo, cies, ciēre;* and *cio, cis, cīre,* to rouse; whence *accīre* and *accītus.*
To these we may add the verb *EDO,* to eat, which, though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with *sum;* thus,
Ind. Pres. *Edo, edis* or *es, edit* or *est,*——*editis* or *estis.*——
Imp. *Ede* or *es, edito* or *esto; edite* or *este; edĭtote* or *estote.*
Sub. Imperf. *Ederem* or *essem, ederes* or *esses, &c.*
Inf. Pres. *Edere* or *esse.*
Passive Ind. Pres. *Editur* or *estur.*
It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

Aggĕro, -as, *to heap up.*	Aggĕro, -is, *to bring together.*
Appello, -as, *to call.*	Appello, -is, *to arrive.*
Compello, -as, *to address.*	Compello, -is, *to drive together.*
Collĭgo, -as, *to bind.*	Collĭgo, -is, *to gather together.*
Consterno, -as, *to astonish.*	Consterno, -is, *to strew.*
Effĕro, -as, *to enrage.*	Effĕro, -fers, *to bring out.*
Fundo, -as, *to found.*	Fundo, -is, *to pour out.*
Mando, -as, *to command.*	Mando, -is, *to chew.*
Obsĕro, -as, *to lock.*	Obsĕro, -is, *to beset.*
Vŏlo, -as, *to fly.*	Vŏlo, vis, *to will.*

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

Cōlo, -as, *to strain.*	Cŏlo, -is, *to till.*
Dĭco, -as, *to dedicate.*	Dico, -is, *to say.*

Edŭco, -as, *to train up.*	Edūco, -is, *to lead forth.*
Lēgo, -as, *to send.*	Lĕgo, -is, *to read.*
Vădo, -as, *to wade.*	Vādo, -is, *to go.*

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite:

Aceo, acui, *to be sour.*	Acuo, acui, *to sharpen.*
Cresco, crēvi, *to grow.*	Cerno, crēvi, *to see.*
Frīgeo, frixi, *to be cold.*	Frīgo, frixi, *to fry.*
Fulgeo, fulsi, *to shine.*	Fulcio, fulsi, *to prop.*
Lūceo, luxi, *to shine.*	Lūgeo, luxi, *to mourn.*
Păveo, pāvi, *to be afraid.*	Pasco, pāvi, *to feed.*
Pendeo, pĕpendi, *to hang.*	Pendo, pĕpendi, *to weigh.*

3. The following agree in the supine:

Cresco, crētum, *to grow.*	Cerno, cretum, *to behold.*
Măneo, mansum, *to stay.*	Mando, mansum, *to chew.*
Sto, statum, *to stand.*	Sisto, statum, *to stop.*
Succenseo, -censum, *to be angry.*	Succendo, -censum, *to kindle.*
Tĕneo, tentum, *to hold.*	Tendo, tentum, *to stretch out.*
Verro, versum, *to sweep.*	Verto, versum, *to turn.*
Vinco, victum, *to overcome.*	Vivo, victum, *to live.*

THE OBSOLETE CONJUGATION.

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e*; as, *audībam, scībam*; for *audiēbam, sciēbam.*

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ībor* in the passive voice; as, *dormībo, dormībor*, for *dormiam, dormiar.*

3. The present of the subjunctive anciently ended in *IM*; as, *edim*, for *edam*; *duim* for *dem.*

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO*; as, *levassim, levasso*, for *levaverim, levavero*; *capsim, capso*, for *ceperim, cepero*: Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE*; as, *levassere*, for *levaturus esse.*

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *mĭnor* in the plural; as, *famĭno*, for *fare*; and *progrĕdimĭnor* for *progrĕdimini.*

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *farier*, for *fari*; *dicier*, for *dici.*

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable: thus, *credo inimicos dicturum esse*, for *dicturos*, Cic. *Cohortes ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. ad Attic. viii. 12.

DERIVATION AND COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as, *Cæno*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw stones; *operor*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel, &c. from *cæna*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrisso*, *græcor*, *bubulo*, *cornicor*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Grecian, a crow, &c. from *pater*, *Græcus*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *ito*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamito*, to cry frequently: *terreo*, *territo*; *verto*, *versо*; *dormio*, *dormito*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minitor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *noscito* from *nosco*; *scitor*, or rather *sciscitor*, from *scio*; *pavito*, from *paveo*; *sector*, from *sequor*; *loquitor*, from *loquor*. So *quæsito*, *fundito*, *agito*, *fluito*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other frequentatives; as, *curro*, *cursо*, *cursito*; *pello*, *pulsо*, *pulsito*, or by contraction *pulto*; *capio*, *capto*, *captito*; *cano*, *canto*, *cantito*; *defendo*, *defensо*, *defensito*; *dico*, *dicto*, *dictito*; *gero*, *gesto*, *gestito*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactito*; *venio*, *ventito*; *mutio*, *mussо*, (for *mutito*) *mussito*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE Verbs* mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person sing. of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*: as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *calesco*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labascо*, from *labo*; *tremisco*, from *tremo*; *obdormisco*, from *obdormio*. *Hisco*, from *hio*, is contracted for *hiasco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *puerasco*, from *puer*; *dulcesco*, from *dulcis*; *juvenesco*, from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE Verbs* signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *rio* and shortening the *u*; as, *cænaturio*, I desire to sup, from *cænatum*. They

are all of the fourth conjugation, and want both preterite and ſupine, except theſe three, *eŭrio*, to deſire to eat; *partŭrio*, to be in travail; *nuptŭrio*, to deſire to be married.

There are a few verbs in LLO, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *cantillo, ſorbillo, -are*, I ſing, I ſup a little. To theſe ſome add *albĕo* and *candĕo, -are*, to be or to grow whitiſh; alſo *nigreo, fodico*, and *vellico*. Some verbs in SSO are called *Intenſive*; as, *Capeſſo, faceſſo, peteſſo* or *petiſſo*, I take, I do, I ſeek earneſtly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepoſitions. Many of the ſimple verbs are not in uſe; as, *Fŭto, fendo, ſpecio, gruo*, &c. The component parts uſually remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as, *prodeo*, for *pro-eo*: or taken away; as, *aſporto, omitto, trado, pejĕro, pergo, debeo, præbeo*, &c. for *abſporto, obmitto, tranſdo, perjuro, perrego, debibeo, præbibeo*, &c. So *demo, promo, ſumo*, of *de, pro, ſub*, and *emo*, which anciently ſignified *to take* or *to take away*. Often the vowel or dipthong of the ſimple verb, and the laſt conſonant of the prepoſition, is changed; as, *damno, condemno; calco, conculco; lædo, collido; audio, obĕdio*, &c. *Affĕro, aufero, collaudo, implĭco*, &c. for *adfero, abfero, conlaudo, inplico*, &c.

PARTICIPLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its ſignification implies time.

It is ſo called, becauſe it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having *in Latin* gender and declenſion from the one, time and ſignification from the other, and number from both.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their ſignification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come: only participles in *dus* are always paſſive, and import not ſo much future time, as obligation or neceſſity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the preſent and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *amatūrus*, about to love: and the perfect and future paſſive; as, *amatus*, loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle preſent in the paſſive voice; which defect muſt be ſupplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to expreſs the perfect participle active in Engliſh, we uſe a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the ſubjunctive in Latin, or ſome other tenſe, according to its connection with the other words of a ſentence; as, he having loved, *quum amaviſſet*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sedens, ſeſſurus; ſtans, ſtaturus*.

From ſome Neuter verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tenſe; as, *Erratus, feſtinatus, juratus, laboratus, vigilatus, ceſſatus, ſudatus, triumphatus, regnatus, decurſus, deſitus, emeritus, emerſus, obitus, placitus, ſuccēſſus, occāſus*, &c. and alſo of the future in *dus*: as, *Jurandus, vigilandus, regnandus, carendus, dormiendus, erubeſcendus*, &c. Neuter paſſive verbs are equally various. *Veneo*, has no participle: *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fiſus*; *ſoleo, ſolens* and *ſolitus*; *vapŭlo, vapulans* and *vapulaturus*; *Gaudeo, gaudens, gaviſus*, and *gaviſurus*; *Audeo, audens, auſus, auſurus, audendus*. *Auſus* is uſed both in an active and paſſive ſenſe; as, *Auſi omnes immane nefas, auſoque potiti*. Virg.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

Loquens, ſpeaking; *locutūrus*, about to ſpeak; *locutus*, having ſpoken; *loquendus*, to be ſpoken: *Dignans*, vouchſafing; *dignaturus*, about to vouchſafe; *dignatus*, having vouchſafed, being vouchſafed, *or* having been vouchſafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchſafed. Many Participles of the perfect tenſe from Deponent verbs have both an active and paſſive ſenſe; as, *Abominatus, conatus, confeſſus, adortus, amplexus, blandītus, largītus, mentītus, oblītus, teſtatus, veneratus*, &c.

There are ſeveral Participles compounded with *in* ſignifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of ſuch compoſition; as, *Inſciens, inſpĕrans, indīcens*, for *non dicens, inopīnans* and *necopīnans, immĕrens; Illæſus, impranſus, inconſultus, incuſtoditus, immetatus, impunītus, imparatus, incomitatus, incomptus, indemnatus, indotatus, incorruptus, interritus*, and *imperterritus, inteſtatus, inānſus, inopinatus, insultus, incenſus*, for *non cenſus*, not regiſtered; *infectus*, for *non factus, inviſus*, for *non viſus, indictus*, for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incenſus* from *incendo: infectus* from *infacio; inviſus* from *invideo; indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the ſignification of a Participle we take away *time*, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of compariſon; as,

Amans, loving, *amantior, amantiſſimus; doctus*, learned, *doctior, doctiſſimus*: or a ſubſtantive; as, *Præfectus*, a commander or governor; *conſonans*, f. ſc. *litera*, a conſonant; *continens*, f. ſc. *terra*, a continent; *confluens*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *oriens*, m. ſc. *ſol*, the eaſt; *occidens*, m. the weſt; *dictum*, a ſaying; *ſcriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS, ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which although reſembling participles are reckoned adjectives, becauſe they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *alatus, barbatus, cordatus, caudatus, criſtatus, auritus, pellitus turritus; aſtutus, cornutus, naſutus*, &c. winged, bearded, diſcreet, &c. But *auratus, æratus, argentatus, ferratus, plumbatus, gypſatus, calcatus, clypeatus, galeatus, tunicatus, larvatus, palliatus, lymphatus, purpuratus, prætextatus*, &c. covered with gold, braſs, ſilver, &c. are accounted participles, becauſe they are ſuppoſed to come from obſolete verbs. So perhaps *calamiſtratus*, frizzled, criſped or curled, *crinītus*, having long hair, *perītus*, &c.

There are a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much reſemble Participles in their ſignification, but generally expreſs the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the ſame with *valde vitans*, avoiding much; *Sall. Jug.* 60. and 101; *Liv.* XXV. 13. So *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populabundus*, *moribundus*, &c.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are Participial words, which bear the ſignification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the ſecond declenſion, through all the caſes of the ſingular number, except the vocative.

There are, both in Latin and Engliſh, ſubſtantives derived from the verb, which ſo much reſemble the Gerund in their ſignification, that frequently they may be ſubſtituted in its place. They are generally uſed, however, in a more undetermined ſenſe than the Gerund, and in Engliſh have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the ſubſtantive, *Delector lectione Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of *Cicero*.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *io*, and ſome others, often take *u* inſtead of *e*; as, *faciundum*, *di*, *do*, *dus*; *experiundum*, *potiundum*, *gerundum*, *petundum*, *dicundum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the ſame ſignification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any perſon or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declenſion, having only the accuſative and ablative caſes.

The former Supine is commonly uſed in an active, and the latter in a paſſive ſenſe, but ſometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulatum dudum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem*, v. *verberarer*, to be beaten, Plaut.

ADVERB.

An Adverb is an indeclinable part of ſpeech, *added to a verb*, adjective, or other adverb, to expreſs ſome circumſtance, quality, or manner of their ſignification.

All Adverbs may be divided into two claſſes, namely, thoſe which denote *Circumſtance*; and thoſe which denote *Quality*, *Manner*, &c.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly thoſe of *Place*, *Time*, and *Order*.

1. Adverbs of *Place* are fivefold, namely ſuch as ſignify,

1. *Motion or reſt in a place.*

Ubi?	*Where?*
Hic,	*Here.*
Illic, Iſthic, Ibi,	*There.*
Intus,	*Within.*
Foris,	*Without.*
Ubique,	*Every where.*
Nuſquam,	*No where.*
Alĭcubi,	*Some where.*
Alĭbi,	*Elſe where.*
Ubivis,	*Any where.*
Ibĭdem,	*In the ſame place.*

2. *Motion to a place.*

Quo?	*Whither?*
Huc,	*Hither.*
Illuc, Iſthuc,	*Thither.*
Intro,	*In.*
Foras,	*Out.*
Eò,	*To that place.*
Aliò,	*To another place.*
Aliquò,	*To ſome place.*
Eōdem,	*To the ſame place.*

3. *Motion towards a place.*

Quorſum?	*Whitherward?*
Verſus,	*Towards.*
Horſum,	*Hitherward.*
Illorſum,	*Thitherward.*
Surſum,	*Upward.*
Deorſum,	*Downward.*
Antrorſum,	*Forward.*
Retrorſum,	*Backward.*
Dextrorſum,	*Towards the right.*
Siniſtrorſum,	*Towards the left.*

4. *Motion from a place.*

Unde?	*Whence?*
Hinc,	*Hence.*
Illinc, Iſthinc, Inde,	*Thence.*
Aliunde,	*From elſe where.*
Alicunde,	*From ſome place.*
Sicunde,	*If from any place.*
Utrinque,	*On both ſides.*
Superne,	*From above.*
Infĕrne,	*From below.*
Cœlĭtus,	*From heaven.*
Funditus,	*From the ground.*

5. *Motion through or by a place.*

Quà?	*Which way?*
Hàc,	*This way.*
Illac, Iſthac,	*That way.*
Aliâ,	*Another way.*

2. Adverbs of *Time* are threefold, namely, ſuch as ſignify,

1. *Some particular time, either preſent, paſt, future, or indefinite.*

Nunc,	*Now.*
Hodie,	*To day.*
Tunc, Tum,	*Then.*
Heri,	*Yeſterday.*
Dudum, Pridem,	*Heretofore.*
Pridie,	*The day before.*
Nudiustertius,	*Three days ago.*
Nuper,	*Lately.*
Jamjam, Mox,	*Preſently.*
Statim,	*Immediately.*
Protĭnus,	*By and by.*
Illĭco,	*Inſtantly.*
Cras,	*Straightway.*
Poſtridie,	*To-morrow.*
Perendie,	*The day after.*
Nondum,	*Two days hence.*
Quando?	*Not yet.*
Aliquando, Nonnunquam, Interdum,	*When?* *Sometimes.*
Semper,	*Ever.*
Nunquam,	*Never.*
Interim,	*In the mean time.*
Quotidie,	*Daily.*

2. *Continuance of time.*

Diu,	*Long.*
Quamdiu?	*How long?*
Tamdiu,	*So long.*
Jamdiu, Jamdūdum, Jamprīdem,	*Long ago.*

3. *Viciſſitude or repetition of time.*

Quoties?	*How often?*
Sæpe,	*Often.*
Rarò,	*Seldom.*
Toties,	*So often.*
Aliquoties,	*For ſeveral times.*
Viciſſim, Alternātim,	*By turns.*
Rurſus, Itĕrum,	*Again.*
Subinde, Identĭdem,	*Ever and anon, now and then.*
Semel,	*Once.*
Bis,	*Twice.*
Ter,	*Thrice.*
Quater,	*Four times, &c.*

3. Adverbs of *Order.*

Inde,	*Then.*
Deinde,	*After that.*
Dehinc,	*Henceforth.*
Porro,	*Moreover.*
Deinceps,	*So forth.*
Denuo,	*Anew.*
Denique,	*Finally.*
Poſtrēmò,	*Laſtly.*
Primò, -ùm,	*Firſt.*
Secundò, -ùm,	*Secondly.*
Tertiò, -ùm,	*Thirdly.*
Quartò, -ùm,	*Fourthly, &c.*

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Abſolute* or *Comparative.*

Thoſe called *Abſolute* denote,

1. QUALITY, ſimply; as *bene*, well; *malè*, ill; *fortĭter*, bravely: and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. CERTAINTY; as, *profectò, certè, ſanè, planè, næ, utique, ita, etiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *omnīno*, certainly.

3. CONTINGENCE; as *fortè, forſan, fortaſſis, fors*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. NEGATION; as, *non, haud*, not; *nequāquam*, not at all; *neutĭquam*, by no means; *minime*, nothing leſs.

5. PROHIBITION; as, *ne*, not.

6. SWEARING; as, *hercle, pol, edĕpol, mecaſtor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. EXPLAINING; as, *utpŏte, videlĭcet, ſcilĭcet, nimīrum, nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. SEPARATION; as, *ſeorſum*, apart; *ſeparātim*, ſeparately; *ſingillatim*, one by one; *virĭtim*, man by man; *oppidatim*, town by town, &c.

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *ſimul, unà, pariter*, together; *generaliter*, generally; *univerſaliter*, univerſally; *plerumque*, for the moſt part.

10. INDICATION *or* POINTING out; as, *en, ecce,* lo, behold.

11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur, quare, quamobrem,* why, wherefore? *num, an,* whether? *quomodo, qui,* how? To which add, *Ubi, quo, quorsum, unde, quà, quando, quamdiu, quoties.*

Thoſe which are called *Comparative* denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *Valde, maximè, magnopĕre, maximopere, ſummopere, admŏdum, oppĭdò, perquam, longè,* greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nimis, nimium,* too much; *prorſus, penĭtus, omnĭno,* altogether, wholly; *magis,* more; *melĭùs* better; *pejùs,* worſe; *fortiùs,* more bravely: and *optimè,* beſt; *peſſimè,* worſt; *fortiſſimè,* moſt bravely; *and innumerable others of the* comparative *and* ſuperlative *degrees.*

2. DEFECT; as, *Ferme, ferè, propemŏdum, penè,* almoſt; *parum,* little; *paulo, paululum,* very little.

3. PREFERENCE; as, *potiùs, ſatiùs,* rather; *potiſſimùm, præcipuè, præſertim,* chiefly, eſpecially; *imo,* yes, nay, nay rather.

4. LIKENESS *or* EQUALITY; as, *ita, ſic, adeò,* ſo; *ut, uti, ſicut, ſicŭti, velut, velŭti, ceu, tanquam, quaſi,* as, as if; *quemadmŏdum,* even as; *ſatis,* enough; *itĭdem,* in like manner; *juxta,* alike, equally.

5. UNLIKENESS *or* INEQUALITY; as, *aliter, ſecus,* otherwiſe; *aliōqui* or *alioquin,* elſe; *nedum,* much more *or* much leſs.

6. ABATEMENT; as, *ſenſim, paulatim, pedetentim,* by degrees, piecemeal; *vix,* ſcarcely; *egre,* hardly, with difficulty.

7. EXCLUSION; as, *tantùm, ſolùm, mòdo, tantummodo, duntaxat, demum,* only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, and COMPOSITION, of ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Subſtantives, and end commonly in TIM *or* TUS; as, *Partim,* partly, by parts; *nominatim,* by name; *generatim,* by kinds, generally; *ſpeciatim, vicatim, gregatim; radicĭtus,* from the root, &c. 2. From adjectives: and theſe are by far the

most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in E; as, *liberè*, freely; *plenè*, fully: Some in O, UM, and TER; as, *falsò, tantum, graviter*: A few in A, ITUS and IM; as, *raptà, antiquĭtùs, privatim*. Some are used two or three ways; as, *primum*, v. *-ò*; *purè, -iter; certè, -ò; cautè, -tim; humanè, -iter, -ĭtus; publicè, publicĭtus*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in TER, seldom in E; as, *turpiter, feliciter, acriter, pariter; facile, repente*: one in O, *omnĭno*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken Adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter; perfĭdum ridens*, for *perfidè*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for, *multum* or *valde*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud, high*, &c. for *loudly, highly*, &c. In many cases a Substantive is understood; as, *primò*, sc. *loco, optatò advenit*, sc. *tempore; hàc*, sc. *viâ*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille, ĭste, hic, is, idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as from *ille, illic, illuc, illorsum, illinc*, and *illac*. So from *quis, ubi, quo, quorsum, unde*, and *quà*. Also of time; thus, *quando, quamdiu*, and *quoties*.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cæsim*, with the edge; *punctim*, with the point; *strictim*, closely; from *cædo, pungo, stringo: amanter, properanter, dubitanter; distinctè, emendatè; meritò, inopinato*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood, which is also sometimes expressed.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus, intro*, from *in; clanculum*, from *clam; subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durè, facilè, acriter*: The *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *duriùs, facilĭùs, acriùs*: The *superlative*, in *ĭme*; as, *durissĭmè, facillĭmè, acerrĭmè*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too; *as*, bene, meliùs, optimè; malè, pejùs, pessimè; parùm, minùs, minimè, & um; multùm, plus, plurimùm; prope, propiùs, proximè; ocyùs, ocyssime; priùs, primo, -ùm; nuper, nuperrime; novè, & noviter, novissimè; meritò, meritissimò; &c. Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; *as*, fæpè, fæpiùs, fæpissimè; penitùs, penitiùs, penitissimè; satis, satiùs; secus, seciùs; &c. Magis, maxime; *and* potius, potissimum, *want the positive*.

Adverbs are variously compounded of all the different parts of speech; *thus*, postridie, magnopĕre, maximopere, summopere, tantopere, multimŏdis, omnimŏdis, quomŏdo, quare; *of* postero die; magno opere, &c. licet, scilicet, videlicet, *of* ire, scire, videre licet; illĭco, *of* in loco; quorsum, *of* quo versum; commĭnus, *hand to hand, of* cum *or* con *and* manus; eminus, *at a distance, of* e, *and* manus; quorsum, *of* quo versum; denuo *anew, of* de novo; quin, *why not, but, of* qui ne; cur, *of* cui rei; pedetentim, *step by step, as it were* pedem tendendo; perendie, *for* perempto die; nimirum, *of* ne, *i. e.* non mi-

rum; antea, postea, præterea, &c. *of* ante *and* ea, &c. Ubivis, quovis, undelibet, quousque, sicut, sicuti, velut, velúti, desúper, insuper, quamobrem, &c. *of* ubi, *and* vis, &c. nudiustertius, *of* nunc dies tertius; identidem, *of* idem et idem; impræsentiarum, *i. e.* in tempore rerum præsentium, &c.

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, *sapienter*, wisely, for *cum sapientia*; *hic*, for *in hoc loco*; *semper*, for *in omni tempore*; *semel*, for *unâ vice*; *bis*, for *duabus vicibus*; *Mehercule*, for *Hercules me juvet*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other: as, *ubi*, where *or* when; *inde*, from that place, from that time, after that, next; *hactĕnus*, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either *past*, *present*, or *future*; as *jam*, already, now, by and by; *olim*, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, *esse peregrè*, to be abroad; *ire peregrè*, to go abroad; *redire peregrè*, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with *cunque*, answer to the English adjection *so ever*; as, *ubiubi*, or *ubicunque*, wheresoever; *quoquò*, *quòcunque*, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in other interrogative words; as, *quotquot*, or *quotcunque*, how many soever; *quantusquantus*, or *quantuscunque*, how great soever; *utut*, or *utcunque*, however *or* howsoever, &c.

PREPOSITION.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word which shews the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight Prepositions in Latin which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad,	*To.*	Infra,	*Beneath.*
Apud,	*At.*	Juxta,	*Nigh to.*
Ante,	*Before.*	Ob,	*For.*
Adversus,	*Against, towards.*	Propter,	*For, hard by.*
Adversum,		Per,	*By, through.*
Contra,	*Against.*	Præter,	*Besides, except.*
Cis,	*On this side.*	Penes,	*In the power of.*
Citra,		Post,	*After.*
Circa,	*About.*	Pone,	*Behind.*
Circum,		Secus,	*By, along.*
Erga,	*Towards.*	Secundum,	*According to.*
Extra,	*Without.*	Supra,	*Above.*
Inter,	*Between, among.*	Trans,	*On the farther side.*
Intra,	*Within.*	Ultra,	*Beyond.*

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen; namely,

A, Ab, Abs,	*From*, or *by.*	De, E, Ex,	*Of, concerning.* / *Of, out of.*
Absque,	*Without.*	Pro,	*For.*
Cum,	*With.*	Præ,	*Before.*
Clam,	*Without the knowledge of.*	Palam,	*With the knowledge of.*
Coram,	*Before, in the presence of.*	Sine,	*Without.*
		Tenus,	*Up to, as far as.*

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative:

In, *In, into.* Sub, *Under.* Super, *Above.* Subter, *Beneath.*

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally *placed before* the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after; as, *cum*, when joined with *me, te, se*, and sometimes with *quo, qui*, and *quibus*: thus, *mecum, tecum*, &c. *Tenus* is always placed after; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque*; and *ward*, in English; as, *toward, eastward*, &c.

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs; as, *subire*, to undergo. In English they are frequently put after verbs; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to*, &c.

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together; as, *Ex adversus eum locum*, Cic. *Ex adversum Athenas*, C. Nep. *In ante diem quartum Kalendarum Decembris distulit*, i. e. *usque in eum diem*, Cic. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octob.* i. e. *ab eo die*, Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris*, Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions; as, *propalam, protinus, insuper*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification: as, *adeo*, to go to: *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. IN joined with adjectives generally denotes privation; as, *infidus*, unfaithful: but when joined with verbs, increases their signification; as, *indūro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses; as, *invŏcātus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrēnātus, immutātus, insuetus, impensus, inhumatus, intentatus*, &c. 2. PER commonly increases the signification; as, *Percārus, percĕler, percōmis, percuriōsus, perdifficilis, perelegans, pergrātus, pergrăvis, perhospitālis, perillustris. perlætus*, &c. very dear, very swift, &c. 3. PRÆ sometimes increases; as, *Præclārus, prædīves, prædulcis, prædūrus, præpinguis, prævalidus; prævaleo, præpolleo*: and also Ex; as, *Exclāmo, exaggĕro, exaugeo, excalefacio, extenuo, exhilăro*;

but EX ſometimes denotes privation; as, *Exſanguis*, bloodleſs, pale; *excors*, *exanimis*, *-mo*, &c. 4. SUB often diminiſhes; as, *Subalbidus*, *ſubabſurdus*, *ſubamārus*, *ſubdulcis*, *ſubgrandis*, *ſubgrăvis*, *ſubniger*, &c. a little white or whitiſh, &c. DE often ſignifies downward; as, *Decĭdo*, *decurro*, *degrăvo*, *deſpicio*, *delăbor*: ſometimes increaſes; as, *Deămo*, *demīror*; and ſometimes expreſſes privation; as, *Demens*, *decŏlor*, *deformis*, &c.

Obſ. 4. There are five or ſix ſyllables, namely, *am*, *di*, or *dif*, *re*, *ſe*, *con*, which are commonly called *Inſeparable Prepoſitions*, becauſe they are only to be found in compound words: however they generally add ſomething to the ſignification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	*round about.*	as,	Ambio,	*to ſurround.*
Di, Dis,	*aſunder.*		Divello,	*to pull aſunder.*
			Diſtrăho,	*to draw aſunder.*
Re,	*again.*		Relĕgo,	*to read again.*
Se,	*aſide* or *apart.*		Sepōno,	*to lay aſide.*
Con,	*together.*		Concreſco,	*to grow together.*

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a ſentence, to expreſs ſome paſſion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural ſounds, and common to all languages; as, *Oh! Ah!*

Interjections expreſs in one word a whole ſentence, and thus fitly repreſent the quickneſs of the paſſions.

The different paſſions have commonly different words to expreſs them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *evax!* hey, brave, io!
2. GRIEF; as, *ah*, *hei*, *heu*, *eheu!* ah, alas, woes me!
3. WONDER; as, *papæ!* O ſtrange! *vah!* hah!
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* well done!
5. AVERSION; as, *apăge!* away, begone, avaunt, off, fy, tuſh!
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Oh*, *proh!* O!
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat!* ha, aha!
8. IMPRECATION; as, *væ!* wo, pox on't!
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ha*, *ha*, *he!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au*, *ſt*, *pax!* ſilence, huſh, 'ſt!
11. CALLING; as, *eho*, *chŏdum*, *io*, *ho!* ſo, ho, ho, O!
12. DERISION; as, *hui!* away with!
13. ATTENTION; as, *hem!* ha!

Some Interjections denote ſeveral different paſſions: thus, *Vah!* is uſed to expreſs joy, and ſorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are ſometimes uſed for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a miſchief! *Infandum!* O ſhame! fy, fy! *Miŭrum*, O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

A Conjunction is an indeclinable word, which ſerves to join ſentences together.

Thus, *You* and *I*, and *the boy, read Virgil*, is one ſentence, made up of theſe three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil; You read Virgil; The boy reads Virgil.* In like manner, "You *and* I read Virgil, *but* the boy reads Ovid," is one ſentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following claſſes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et, ac, atque, que*, and; *etiam, quoque, item*, alſo; *cum, tum*, both, and. Alſo their contraries, *nec, neque, neu, neve*, neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut, ve, vel, ſeu, ſive*, either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etſi, etiamſi, tametſi, licet, quanquam, quamvis*, though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *ſed, verum, autem, at, aſt, atqui*, but; *tamen, attămen, verumtamen, verumenimvĕro*, yet, notwithſtanding, nevertheleſs.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam, nămque, enim*, for; *quia, quippe, quoniam*, becauſe; *quòd*, that, becauſe.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque*, therefore; *quapropter, quocirca*, wherefore; *proinde*, therefore; *cum, quum*, ſeeing, ſince; *quandoquidem*, forasmuch as.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut, uti*, that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *ſi, ſin*, if; *dum, modo, dummŏdo*, provided, upon condition that; *ſiquidem*, if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni, niſi*, unleſs, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *ſaltem, certe*, at leaſt.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an, anne, num*, whether; *ne, annon*, whether, not; *necne*, or, not.

12. EXPLETIVE; as *autem, vero*, now, truly; *quidem, equĭdem*, indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde*, thereafter; *denique*, finally; *insŭper*, moreover; *cætĕrum*, moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet, ſcilicet, nempe, nimīrum*, &c. to wit, namely.

Obſ. 1. The ſame words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an, anne*, &c. are either *interrogative adverbs*: as, *An ſcribit?* Does he write? or *ſuſpenſive conjunctions*; as, *Neſcio an ſcribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obſ. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, ſtand firſt in a ſentence; as, *Ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, ſive, at, ſed, verum, nam, quandoquidem, quocirca, quare, ſin, ſiquidem, præterquam*, &c.: ſome ſtand in the ſecond place; as, *Autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim*: and ſome may indifferently be put either firſt or ſecond; as, *Etiam, equidem, licet, quamvis, quanquam, tamen, attamen, namque, quod, quia, quoniam, quippe, utpote, ut, uti, ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, proinde, propte-*

ut, *ſi*, *ni*, *niſi*, &c. Hence aroſe the diviſion of them into *Prepoſitive*, *Subjunctive*, and *Common*. To the ſubjunctive may be added theſe three, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, which are always joined to ſome other word, and are called *Enclitics*, becauſe, when put after long ſyllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing ſyllable; as in the following verſe,

Indoctuſque pilæ, diſcive, trochive, quieſcit. *Horat.*

But when theſe enclitic conjunctions come after a ſhort vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbuteos fœtus montanăque fraga legebant. *Ovid.*

SENTENCES.

A SENTENCE is any thought of the mind expreſſed by two or more words put together; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in ſentences, is called *Syntax* or *Conſtruction*.

Words in ſentences have a twofold relation to one another; *namely*, that of *Concord* or Agreement; and that of *Government* or Influence.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in ſome accidents; as, in gender, number, perſon, or caſe.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain caſe, or mode.

General principles of SYNTAX.

1. In every ſentence, there muſt be a verb and a nominative expreſſed or underſtood.

2. Every adjective muſt have a ſubſtantive expreſſed or underſtood.

3. All the caſes of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, muſt be governed by ſome other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a ſubſtantive noun expreſſed or underſtood.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accuſative is governed by an active verb, or by a prepoſition; or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative ſtands by itſelf, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a prepoſition expreſſed or underſtood.

9. The infinitive is governed by ſome verb or adjective.

All Sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

Syntax therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general diviſion of ſentences.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A Simple Sentence is that which has but one nominative; and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative, ſubjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a ſimple ſentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The SUBJECT is the word which marks the perſon or thing ſpoken of.

The ATTRIBUTE expreſſes what we affirm concerning the ſubject; as,

The boy reads his leſſon: Here, "the boy," is the *Subject* of diſcourſe, or the perſon ſpoken of; "reads his leſſon," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the ſubject. *The diligent boy reads his leſſon carefully at home.* Here we have ſtill the ſame ſubject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it; and the ſame attribute, "reads his leſſon," with the circumſtances of manner and place ſubjoined, "carefully," "at home."

CONCORD.

The following words agree together in ſentences, 1. A ſubſtantive with a ſubſtantive. 2. An adjective with a ſubſtantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. *Agreement of one Subſtantive with another.*

RULE 1. Subſtantives ſignifying the ſame thing, agree in caſe; as,

Cicĕro orātor, Cicero the Orator; *Ciceronis oratōris*, Of Cicero the Orator. *Urbs Athēnæ*, The city Athens; *Urbis Athēnārum*, Of the city Athens.

2. *Agreement of an Adjective with a Subſtantive.*

2. An Adjective agrees with a Subſtantive, in gender, number, and caſe; as,

Bonus vir, a good man; *Boni viri*, good men.
Fœmina caſta, a chaſte woman; *Fœminæ caſtæ*, chaſte women.
Dulce pomum, a ſweet apple; *Dulcia poma*, ſweet apples.

And ſo through all the caſes and degrees of compariſon.

This rule applies alſo to Adjective pronouns and Participles; as, *Meus liber*, my book; *ager colendus*, a field to be tilled.

Obſ. 1. The ſubſtantive is frequently underſtood, or its place ſupplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triſte*, ſc. *negotium*, a ſad thing, Virg.; *Tuum ſcire*, the ſame with, *tua ſcientia*, thy knowledge, Perſ. We ſometimes however find the ſubſtantive underſtood in the feminine; as, *Non poſteriores ferram*, ſup. *partes*, Ter.

Obſ. 2. An adjective often ſupplies the place of a ſubſtantive; as, *Certus amicus*, A ſure friend: *Bona ferina*, Good veniſon: *Summum bonum*, The chief good: *Homo* being underſtood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*.

Obſ. 3. Theſe adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *ſummus*, *ſupremus*, *reliquus*, *cætera*, uſually ſignify *the firſt part*, *the middle part*, &c. of any thing; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the higheſt part of a tree.

Obſ. 4. Whether the adjective or ſubſtantive ought to be placed firſt in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the ſubſtantive be a monoſyllable, and the adjective a polyſyllable, the ſubſtantive is elegantly put firſt; as, *vir clariſſimus*, *res præſtantiſſima*, &c.

3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

3. A Verb agrees with the Nominative before it in number and perſon; as,

Ego lego, I read; *Nos legimus*, We read.
Tu ſcribis, Thou writeſt *or* you write; *Vos ſcribitis*, Ye *or* you write.
Præceptor docet, The maſter teaches; *Præceptores docent*, Maſters teach.

And ſo through all the modes, tenſes, and numbers.

Obſ. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the firſt perſon; *tu* and *vos* of the ſecond perſon; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the firſt and ſecond perſon in Latin is ſeldom expreſſed, unleſs for the ſake of emphaſis or diſtinction; as, *Tu es patronus*, *tu pater*, Ter. *Tu legis*, *ego ſcribo*.

Obſ. 2. An infinitive, or ſome part of a ſentence, often ſupplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri eſt turpe*, to lie is baſe; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit dictatorem*; The ſacrifice not being attended

mihi esse beato, I may be happy; or, *licet mihi esse beatum*, *me* being understood; thus, *licet mihi* (me) *esse beatum*. The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied; as, *Licet esse beatum*, One may be happy, *scil. alicui* or *homini*.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose; thus, *Retulit Ajax Jovis esse pronĕpos*, for *Se esse pronepotem*; Ovid. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *te vocari sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. 1. 16. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens*; Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse socer*; Lucan.

GOVERNMENT.

I. The GOVERNMENT of SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, *(when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former;)* as,

Amor Dei, The love of God; *Lex naturæ*, The law of nature.
Domus Cæsăris, The house of Cæsar, *or* Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective; as *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son: and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis*; *Ensis Evandrius*, for *Evandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense; thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him: So *Caritas patris*, signifies either, The affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur*; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood; as, *Hectŏris Andromache*, scil. *uxor*; *Ventum est ad vesĭæ*, scil. *ædem* or *templum*; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive, particularly among the poets; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended; Virg.

Obſ. 5. Some ſubſtantives are joined with certain prepoſitions; *as*, Amicitia, inimicitia, pax, cum aliquo; Amor in, *vel* erga, aliquem; Gaudium de re; Cura de aliquo; Mentio illius, *vel* de illo; Quies ab armis; Fumus ex incendiis, &c.

Obſ. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in Engliſh by ſeveral other particles beſides *of*; as, *Deſcenſus Averni*, the deſcent *to* Avernus; *Prudentia juris*, skill *in* the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like ſubſtantive nouns: as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So alſo adjective pronouns when uſed as ſubſtantives, or having a noun underſtood; as, *Liber ejus, illius, hujus*, &c. The book of him, or his book, ſc. *hominis*: The book of her, or her book, ſc. *feminæ*. *Libri eorum*, v. *earum*, Their books. *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whoſe book; *Quorum libri*, whoſe books, &c. But we always ſay, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noſter*, not *noſtri*: *ſuum jus*, not *ſui*.

When a paſſive ſenſe is expreſſed, we uſe *mei, tui, ſui, noſtri, veſtri, noſtrum, veſtrum*; but we uſe their poſſeſſives, when an active ſenſe is expreſſed; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved; *amor meus*, my love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find however the poſſeſſives ſometimes uſed paſſively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, Ter. *Labor mei*, My labour, Plaut.

The poſſeſſives *meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, veſter*, have ſometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Peſtis tuum hominis ſimplicis*, Cic. 2. Phil. Noſter duorum eventus, *Liv.* Tuum ipſius ſtudium, *Cic.* Mea ſcripta timentis, &c. *Hor.* Solius meum peccatum corrigi non poteſt, *Cic.* Id maxime quemque decet, quod eſt cujuſque ſuum maxime. *Id.*

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are uſed, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative; *as*, Cato interfecit ſe; Miles defendit ſuam vitam; Dicit ſe ſcripturum eſſe. We find however *is* or *ille* ſometimes uſed in examples of this kind; *as*, Deum agnoſcimus ex operibus ejus, *Cic.* Perſuadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiſcantur, *for* una ſecum. *Cæſ.*

VII. If the latter Subſtantive have an Adjective of praiſe or diſpraiſe joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir ſummæ prudentiæ, *or* ſummâ prudentiâ, *A man of great wiſdom.*
Puer probæ indolis, *or* probâ indole, *A boy of a good diſpoſition.*

Obſ. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing ſubſtantive, but by ſome prepoſition underſtood; as, *cum, de, ex, in, &c.* Thus, *Vir ſummâ prudentiâ*, is the ſame with *vir cum ſumma prudentia.*

Obſ. 2. In ſome phraſes the genitive is only uſed; *as*, Magni formica laboris, *The laborious ant:* Vir imi ſubſellii, homo minimi pretii, *a perſon of the loweſt rank.* Non multi cibi hoſpitem accipies, ſed multi joci, *Cic.* Ager trium jugerum. In others only the ablative; *as*, Es bono animo, *Be of good courage.* Mira ſum alacritate ad litigandum, *Cic.* Capite aperto eſt, *His head is bare;* obvoluto, *covered.* Capite et ſupercilio ſemper eſt raſis, *Id.* Mulier magno natu, *Liv.* Sometimes both are uſed in the ſame ſentence; *as*, Adoleſcens eximiâ ſpe, ſummæ virtutis, *Cic.* The ablative more frequently occurs in proſe than the genitive.

Obſ. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in caſe with the former ſubſtantive, and then the latter ſubſtantive is put in the ablative: thus, we ſay either, *Vir præſtantis ingenii*, or *præſtanti ingenio;* or *Vir præſtans ingenio*, and ſometimes *præſtans ingenii.* Among the poets the latter ſubſtantive is frequently put in the accuſative by a Greek conſtruction, *ſecundum*, or *quod ad* being underſtood by the figure commonly called *Synecdŏche; as*, Miles fractus membra, *i. e.* fractus *ſecundum*, or *quod ad* membra, *or* habens membra fracta. Os humeroſque deo ſimilis. *Virg.*

Adjectives taken as Subſtantives.

VIII. An Adjective in the neuter gender without a ſubſtantive governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniæ, *Much money.* Quid rei eſt? *What is the matter?*

Obſ. 1. This manner of expreſſion is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much uſed by the beſt writers; *as*, Plus eloquentiæ, minus ſapientiæ, tantum fidei, id negotii; Quicquid erat patrum, reos diceres, *Liv.*

Obſ. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like ſubſtantives, generally ſignify quantity; *as*, multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum, &c. To which add, hoc, illud, iſtud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam, &c. *Plus* and *quid* almoſt always govern the genitive, and therefore by ſome are thought to be ſubſtantives.

Obſ. 3. *Nihil*, and theſe neuter pronouns, *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the firſt and ſecond declenſion in the genitive; as, *nihil ſinceri*, no ſincerity; but ſeldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declenſion, particularly thoſe which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hoſtile timerent*, not *hoſtilis:* We find however *quicquid civilis*, Liv. 5. 3.

Obſ. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender alſo govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Anguſta viarum, Opaca*

locorum, *Telluris operta*, *loca* being underſtood. *So* Amara curarum, acuta belli, *ſc.* negotia, *Horat.* An adjective indeed of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a ſubſtantive underſtood; as, Amicus Cæſaris, Patria Ulyſſis, &c.

Opus and *Uſus*.

IX. *Opus* and *Uſus*, ſignifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Eſt opus pecuniâ, There is need of money; *Uſus viribus*, Need of ſtrength.

Obſ. 1. *Opus* and *uſus* are ſubſtantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themſelves, but by ſome prepoſition, as *pro* or the like, underſtood. They ſometimes alſo, although more rarely, govern the genitive; *as*, Lectionis opus eſt, *Quinct.* Operæ uſus eſt, *Liv.*

Obſ. 2. *Opus* is often conſtrued like an indeclinable adjective; *as*, Dux nobis opus eſt, *We need a general*, Cic. Dices nummos mihi opus eſſe. *Id.* Nobis exempla opus ſunt. *Id.*

Obſ. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato*, Need of haſte; *Opus conſulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid facto uſus eſt?* Ter. The participle has ſometimes a ſubſtantive joined with it; as, *Mihi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.

Obſ. 4. *Opus* is ſometimes joined with the infinitive, or the ſubjunctive with *ut*; *as*, Siquid forte ſit, quod opus ſit ſciri, *Cic.* Nunc tibi opus eſt, ægram ut te adſimules, *Plaut.* It is often placed *abſolutely*, i. e. without depending on any other word; *as*, ſic opus eſt, ſi opus ſit, *&c.*

II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or ſuch as ſignify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avidus gloriæ, *Deſirous of glory.* Ignarus fraudis, *Ignorant of fraud.* Memor beneficiorum, *Mindful of favors.*

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax*, *edax*, *ferax*, *tenax*, *pertinax*, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans*, *appĕtens*, *cupiens*, *inſŏlens*, *ſciens*; *conſultus*, *doctus*, *expertus*, *inſuetus*, *inſolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expreſſing various affections of the mind; 1. Deſire; as, *avarus*, *cupidus*, *ſtudioſus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance and doubting; as, *callidus*, *certus*,

certior, conscius, gnarus, peritus, prudens, &c. *Ignarus, incertus, inscius, imprudens, imperitus, immemor, rudis; ambiguus, dubius, suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary; as, *anxius, curiosus, solicitus, providus, diligens; incuriosus, securus, negligens*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolosus, pavidus, timidus, trepidus; impavidus, interritus, intrepidus*. 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innocens, insons*.

To these add many adjectives of various significations; *as*, æger animi; ardens, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erectus, falsus, felix, fessus, furens, ingens, integer, lætus, præstans, animi; modicus vŏti; integer vitæ; seri studiorum, *Hor*. *But we say* æger pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, præstans doctrinâ, modicus cultu; Lætus negotio, de re, *or* propter rem, *&c. and never* æger pedum, *&c.*

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algŏris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. *So* amans virtutis, *and* amans virtutem; doctus grammaticæ, *skilled in grammar*; doctus grammaticam, *one who has learned it*.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction, as, avidus in pecuniis, *Cic*. Avidior ad rem, *Ter*. Jure consultus & peritus, *or* juris, *Cic*. Rudis literarum, in jure civili, *Cic*. Rudis, arte, ad mala, *Ovid*. Doctus Latine, Latinis, literis, *Cic*. Assuetus labore, in omnia, *Liv*. Mensæ herilî, *Virg*. Insuetus moribus Romanis, *in the dat. Liv*. Laboris, ad onera portanda, *Cæs*. Desuetus bello, & triumphis *in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg*. Anxius, sollicitus, securus, de re aliqua; diligens in, ad, de, *Cic*. Negligens in aliquem, in *or* de re: Reus de vi, criminibus, *Cic*. Certior factus de re, *rather than* rei, *Cic*.

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causa, in re*, or *in negotio*, or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causa* or *in re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, *or* in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *studiosus pecuniæ*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniæ*, having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Aliquis philosophorum,	Some one of the philosophers.
Senior fratrum,	The elder of the brothers.

Doctissimus Romanorum,	The most learned of the Romans.
Quis nostrum?	Which of us?
Una musarum,	One of the muses.
Octavus sapientum,	The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius*, *nullus*, *solus*, &c. *quis* and *qui*, with their compounds: also Comparatives, Superlatives, and some Numerals; as, *unus*, *duo*, *tres*; *primus*, *secundus*, &c. To these add *multi*, *pauci*, *plerique*, *medius*.

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former; as, Indus fluminum maximus, *Cic.* Rarely with the latter; as, Delphinus animalium velocissimum, *Plin.* The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as, *Unus de fratribus*; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter*; as, Pulcherrimus ante omnes, *for* omnium, *Virg.* Primus inter omnes, *Id.*

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, Vir fortissimus nostræ civitatis, *Cic.* Maximus stirpis, *Liv.* Ultimos orbis, *Hor.*

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two; Superlatives when we speak of more than two; as, *Major fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two*; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, are applied with regard to two; *quis*, *unus*, *alius*, *nullus* with regard to three or more; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether *or* which of you *two*; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three*: but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

2. *Adjectives governing the Dative.*

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative; as,

Utilis bello,	Profitable for war.
Perniciosus reipublicæ,	Hurtful to the commonwealth.
Similis patri,	Like to his father.

Or thus, *any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong;

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit; *as*, Benignus, bonus, commodus, felix, fructuosus, prosper, saluber.——Calamitosus, damnosus, dirus, exitiosus, funestus, incommodus, malus, noxius, pernicioſus, pestifer.

2. Of pleasure or pain; *as*, Acceptus, dulcis, gratus, gratiosus, jucundus, lætus, suavis.——Acerbus, amarus, insuavis, injucundus, ingratus, molestus, tristis.

3. Of friendship or hatred; *as*, Addictus, æquus, amicus, benevolus, blandus, carus, deditus, fidus, fidelis, lenis, mitis, propitius.——Adversus, æmulus, asper, crudelis, contrarius, infensus, infestus, infidus, immitis, inimicus, iniquus, invisus, invidus, iratus, odiosus, suspectus, trux.

4. Of clearness or obscurity; *as*, Apertus, certus, compertus, conspicuus, manifestus, notus, perspicuus.——Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.

5. Of nearness; *as*, Finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus.

6. Of fitness or unfitness; *as*, Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, habilis, idoneus, opportunus.——Ineptus, inhabilis, importunus, inconveniens.

7. Of ease or difficulty; *as*, Facilis, levis, obvius, pervius.——Difficilis, arduus, gravis, laboriosus, periculosus, invius. To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; *as*, Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus.

8. Of equality or inequality; *as*, Æqualis, æquævus, par, compar, suppar.——Inæqualis, impar, dispar, discors. Also of likeness or unlikeness, *as*, Similis, æmulus, geminus.——Dissimilis, absonus, alienus, diversus, discolor.

9. Several adj. compounded with CON; *as*, Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, consentaneus, consonus, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens. Contiguous; *as*, Mari aër continens est, *Cic.*

To these add many other adjectives of various significations; *as*, Obnoxius, subjectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, præsto, secundus, *&c.*—particularly,

Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative; as,

Amandus *vel* amabilis omnibus, *To be loved by all men.*

So *mors est terribilis malis; Optabilis omnibus pax; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*, Cic. *Semel omnibus calcanda est via lethi*, Hor. Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella matribus detestata*, hated by, Hor.

Verbals in DUS are often construed with the prep. *a*; as, *Deus est venerandus & colendus a nobis*, Cic. Perfect participles are usually so; as, *Mors Crassi est a multis desleta*, rather than *multis desleta*, Cic. *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus*, &c. Hardly ever *tibi*.

Obſ. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of ſpeech; but put after them, to expreſs the object to which their ſignification refers.

The particle *to* in Engliſh is often to be ſupplied; as, *Similis patri* Like his father, *to* being underſtood.

Obſ. 2. Subſtantives have likewiſe ſometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille eſt pater, dux,* vel *filius mihi,* He is father, leader, *or* ſon to me: ſo, *Præſidium reis, decus amicis, &c.* Hor. *Exitium pecori,* Virg. *Virtutibus hoſtis,* Cic.

Obſ. 3. The following adjectives have ſometimes the dative after them, and ſometimes the genitive; *Affinis, ſimilis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, ſuperſtes, conſcius, æqualis, contrarius,* and *adverſus:* as, *Similis tibi,* or *tui; Superſtes patri* or *patris; Conſcius facinori* or *facinoris. Conſcius* and ſome others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens ſibi conſcia recti.* We ſay, *Similes, diſſimiles, pares, diſpares, æquales, communes, inter ſe: Par & communis cum aliquo. Civitas ſecum ipſa diſcors; diſcordes ad alia.* Liv.

Obſ. 4. Adjectives ſignifying uſefulneſs or fitneſs, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accuſative with a prepoſition; as,

Utilis, inutilis, aptus, ineptus, accommodatus, idoneus, habilis, inhabilis, opportunus, conveniens, &c. *alicui rei,* or *ad aliquid.* Many other adjectives governing the dat. are likewiſe conſtrued with prepoſitions; as, *Attentus quæſtis,* Hor. *Attentus ad rem,* Ter.

Obſ. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendſhip or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are uſually conſtrued with the dative only; as, *Affabilis, arrogans, aſper, carus, difficilis, fidelis, invifus, iratus, offenſus, ſuſpectus,* ALICUI. II. Some with the prepoſition IN and the accuſative; as, *Acerbus, animatus, beneficus, gratioſus, injurioſus, liberalis, mendax, miſericors, officioſus, pius, impius, prolixus, ſeverus, ſordidus, tomus, vehemens,* IN ALIQUEM. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accuſ. and the prepoſition IN, ERGA, or ADVERSUS going before; as, *Contumax, criminoſus, durus, exitiabilis, gravis, hoſpitalis, implacabilis,* (and perhaps alſo *inexorabilis & intolerabilis,*) *iniquus, ſævus,* ALICUI or in ALIQUEM. *Benevolus, benignus, moleſtus,* ALICUI, or ERGA ALIQUEM. *Mitis, comis,* IN, or ERGA ALIQUEM, and ALICUI. *Pervicax* ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. *Crudelis* IN ALIQUEM, ſeldom ALICUI. *Amicus, æmulus, infenſus, infeſtus,* ALICUI, ſeldom IN ALIQUEM. *Gratus* ALICUI, or IN, ERGA, ADVERSUS ALIQUEM. We ſay *alienus alicui* or *alicujus;* but oftener *ab aliquo,* and ſometimes *aliquo* without the prepoſition.

AUDIENS is conſtrued with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat,* he was obedient to the king; not *regis; Dicto audiens fuit juſſis magiſtratuum,* Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes ſunt,* not *dictis,* Cic.

Obſ. 6. Adjectives ſignifying motion or tendency to a thing, have uſually after them the accuſative with the prepoſition *ad* or *in,* ſeldom the dative; as,

Pronus, propenſus, proclivis, celer, tardus, piger, &c. ad iram, or *in iram.*

Obſ. 7. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accuſative; as, *Propior montem*, ſcil. *ad*. Sall. *Proximus finem*, Liv.

Obſ. 8. *IDEM* ſometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; *as*, Invitum qui ſervat, idem facit occidenti, *Hor.* Jupiter omnibus idem, *Virg.* Eadem illis cenſemus, *Cic.* But in proſe we commonly find, *idem qui, et, ac, atque*; and alſo *ut, cum*; as, *Peripatetici quondam iidem erant qui Academici*, Cic. *Eſt animus erga te, idem ac fuit*, Ter. *Dianam & Lunam eandem eſſe putant*, Cic. *Idem faciunt, ut*, &c. *In eodem loco mecum*, Cic. But it would be improper to ſay of the ſame perſon or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem eſt cum Diana.*

We likewiſe ſay, *alius ac, atque* or *et*; and ſo ſometimes *ſimilis* & *par.*

3. *Adjectives governing the Ablative.*

XIII. Theſe adjectives, *dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, captus*, and *fretus*; alſo *natus, ſatus, ortus, editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus honore, Worthy of honor. *Captus oculis*, Blind. [ſtrength. *Contentus parvo*, Content with little. *Fretus viribus*, Truſting to his *Præditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Ortus regibus*, Deſcended of kings.

So *generatus, creatus, cretus, prognatus, oriundus, procreatus, regibus.*

Obſ. 1. The ablative after theſe adjectives is governed by ſome prepoſition underſtood: as, *Contentus parvo*, ſcil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, ſcil. *in*, *&c.* Sometimes the prepoſiton is expreſſed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Salluſt. *Editus de nympha*, Ovid.

Obſ. 2. *Dignus, indignus*, and *contentus*, have ſometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum*, Virg. So *Macte eſto*, or *macti eſtote virtutis* or *virtute*, Increaſe in virtue, *or* Go on and proſper; *Juberem macte virtute eſſe*, Liv. In the laſt example *macte* ſeems to be uſed adverbially.

4. *Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.*

XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Plenus iræ or *irâ*, Full of anger. *Inops rationis* or *ratione*, Void of reaſon.

So Non inopes temporis, ſed prodigi ſumus, *Sen.* Lentulus nōn verbis inops, *Cic.* Dei plena ſunt omnia, *Cic.* Maxima quæque domus ſervis eſt plena ſuperbis, *Juv.* Res eſt ſoliciti plena timoris amor, *Ovid.* Amor & melle & felle eſt fœcundiſſimus, *Plaut.* Fœcunda virorum paupertas fugitur, *Lucan.* Omnium conſiliorum ejus particeps, *Curt.* Homo ratione particeps, *Cic.* Nihil inſidiis vacuum, *Id.* Vacuas cædis habete manus, *Ovid.*

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, Benignus, exsors, impos, impotens, irritus, liberalis, munificus, prælargus.

2. With the ablative only: Beatus, differtus, frugifer, mutilus, tentus, distentus, tumidus, turgidus.

3. With the genitive more frequently: Compos, consors, egenus, exhæres, expers, fertilis, indigus, parcus, pauper, prodigus, sterilis.

4. With the ablative more frequently: Abundans, cassus, extorris, fœtus, frequens, gravis, gravidus, jejunus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onustus, orbus, pollens, solutus, truncus, viduus, *and* captus.

5. With both promiscuously: Copiosus, dives, fœcundus, ferax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodicus, nimius, opulentus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber.

6. With a preposition; as, Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, instructus, à re aliqua; *for* quod ad rem aliquam attinet, *in*, or *with respect to any thing*. Extorris ab solo patrio, *banished*; Orba ab optimatibus concio, *Liv.* *So* pauper, tenuis, fœcundus, modicus, parcus in re aliqua. Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus a re aliqua. Potens ad rem, & in re.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ 1. VERBS GOVERNING ONLY ONE CASE.

1. *Verbs which govern the Genitive.*

XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis, It belongs to the king, It is the part or property of a king.

So *Insipientis est dicere, non putâram*, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. *Militum est suo duci parere*, It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. Laudare se vani; vituperare stulti est. *Sen.* Hominis est errare; Arrogantis est negligere, quid de se quisque sentiat. *Cic.* Pecus est Meliboei, *Virg.* Hæc sunt hominis; *Ter.* Pauperis est numerare pecus, *Ovid.* Temeritas est florentis ætatis, prudentia senectutis, *Cic.*

¶ *Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum*, are excepted; as,

Tuum est, It is your duty; *Scio tuum esse*, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*.

Obſ. 2. Here ſome ſubſtantive muſt be underſtood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which are ſometimes expreſſed; as, Munus eſt principum; Tuum eſt hoc munus, *Cic.* Neutiquam officium liberi eſſe hominis puto, *Ter.* In ſome caſes the preceding ſubſtantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber eſt* (liber) *fratris.* In like manner, ſome ſubſtantive muſt be ſupplied in ſuch expreſſions as theſe; Ea ſunt modo glorioſa, neque patrandi belli, *ſcil.* cauſâ *or* facta, *Sall.* Nihil tam æquandæ libertatis eſt, *for* ad æquandam libertatem pertinet, *Liv.*

Obſ. 3. We ſay, *Hoc eſt tuum munus*, or *tui muneris*: So *meus eſt* vel *fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*, Cic.

XVI. *Miſereor, miſereſco,* and *ſatago,* govern the genitive; as,

Miſerere civium tuorum, Pity your countrymen.
Satagit rerum ſuarum, He is ſufficiently employed about his own affairs.

Obſ. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek conſtruction, particularly ſuch as ſignify ſome affection of the mind; as, Ango, decipior, deſipio, diſcrucior, excrucio, fallo & fallor, faſtidio, invideo, lætor, miror, pendeo, ſtudeo, vereor; as, Ne angas te animi, *Plaut.* Laborum decipitur, *Hor.* Diſcrucior animi, *Ter.* Pendet mihi animus, pendeo animi, *vel* animo: *but we always ſay,* Pendemus animis, *not* animorum, *are in ſuſpenſe. Cic.* Juſtitiæ prius mirer, *Virg.* In like manner, Abſtineo, deſino, deſiſto, quieſco, regno: *likewiſe,* adipiſcor, condico, credo, fruſtror, furo, laudo, libero, levo, participo, prohibeo: *as,* Abſtineto irarum; Deſine querelarum; Regnavit populorum, *Hor.* Deſiſtere pugnæ, *Virg.* Quarum rerum condixit, *Liv.*

But all theſe verbs are for the moſt part differently conſtrued; thus, Angor, deſipio, diſcrucior, fallor, animo. Hoc animum meum excruciat. Faſtidio, miror, vereor, aliquem, *vel* aliquid. Lætor aliquâ re. Some of them are joined with the infinitive; or with *quod, ut, ne,* and the ſubjunctive.

In like manner we uſually ſay, Deſino aliquid, & ab aliquo, *to give over;* Deſiſto incepto, de negotio, ab illa mente; Quieſco a labore; Regnare in equitibus, oppidis, *ſc.* in, *Cic.* Per urbes, *Virg.* Adipiſci id; Fruſtrari in re; Furere de aliquo, *Cic.*

Obſ. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the ſame manner as after adjectives, is governed by ſome ſubſtantive underſtood. This ſubſtantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs; thus, *Miſereor fratris,* ſcil *cauſâ; Angor animi,* ſcil. *dolore,* or *anxietate.*

2. *VERBS governing the Dative.*

XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the ſign TO or FOR after it in Engliſh; as,

Finis venit imperio, An end is come to the empire, Liv.
Animus redit hostibus, Courage returns to the enemy, Id.
Tibi feris, tibi metis, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, Plaut.

So, Non nobis solum nati sumus, *Cic.* Multa male eveniunt bonis, *Id.* Sol lucet etiam sceleratis, *Sen.* Hæret lateri lethalis arundo, *Virg.*

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English by *to* or *for*; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. *Sum*, and its compounds, govern the dative, (except *possum*;) as,

Præfuit exercitui, He commanded the army.
Adfuit precibus, He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo*, *to have*, governs the dative of a person: as,

Est mihi liber, A book is to me, that is, I have a book.
Sunt mihi libri, Books are to me, i. e. I have books.
Dico libros esse mihi, I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *desum* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber deest mihi*, I want a book; *Libri desunt mihi*; *Scio libros deesse mihi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE, and MALE, govern the dative; as,

Satisfacio, satisdo, benefacio, benedico, benevolo, malefacio, maledico tibi, &c.

III. Many Verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, AD, ANTE, CON, IN, INTER, OB, PRÆ, SUB, and SUPER, govern the dative; as,

1. Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, adno, adnato, adequito, adhæreo, adsto, adstipulor, advolvor, affulgeo, allabor, allaboro, annuo, appareo, applaudo, appropinquo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assideo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo.

2. Antecello, anteeo, antesto, anteverto.

3. Colludo, concino, consono, convivo.

4. Incumbo, indormio, inhio, ingemisco, inhæreo, insideo, insto, insisto, insudo, insulto, invigilo, illacrymo, illudo, imminco, immorior, immoror, impendeo.

5. Intervenio, intermico, intercedo, intercido, interjaceo.

6. Obrepo, obluctor, obtrecto, obstrepo, obmurmuro, occumbo, occurro, occurso, obsto, obsisto, obvenio.

7. Præcedo, præcurro, præco, præsideo, præluceo, præniteo, præsto, prævaleo, præverto.

8. Succedo, succumbo, sufficio, suffragor, subcresco, suboleo, subjaceo, subrepo.

9. Supervenio, supercurro, superstо.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt; as,

Proficio, prosum, placeo, commodo, prospicio, caveo, metuo, timeo, consulo *for* prospicio. *Likewise*, Noceo, officio, incommodo, displiceo, insidior.

2. To favour or assist, and the contrary; as,

Faveo, gratulor, gratificor, grator, ignosco, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, assentor, subparasitor. *Likewise*, Auxilior, adminiculor, subvenio, succurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitulor. *Likewise*, Derogo, detraho, invideo, æmulor.

3. To command and obey, to serve and resist; as,

Impero, præcipio, mando, moderor, *for* modum adhibeo. *Likewise*, Pareo, ausculto, obedio, obsequor, obtempero, morem gero, morigeror, obsecundo. *Likewise*, Famulor, servio, inservio, ministro, ancillor. *Likewise*, Repugno, obsto, reluctor, renitor, resisto, refragor, adversor.

4. To threaten and to be angry; as,

Minor, comminor, interminor, irascor, succenseo.

5. To trust; as, Fido, confido, credo, diffido.

To these add Nubo, excello, hæreo, supplico, cedo, despēro, operor, præstōlor, prevaricor, recipio, *to promise*; renuncio; respondeo, *to answer or satisfy*; tempero, studeo, vaco, *to apply*; convicior.

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, lædo*, and *offendo*, govern the accusative.

Obs. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter signification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accusative expressed or understood.

Obs. 2. Most verbs governing the dative only, have been enumerated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with prepositions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwise construed; and still more signifying advantage or disadvantage, &c. which govern the accusative; as, Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diligo, vexo, crucio, averfor, &c. aliquem, *not* alicui.

Obs. 3. Many of these verbs are variously construed; particularly such as are compounded with a preposition; as,

Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, præcedere, præcurrere, præire, &c. alicui, *or* aliquem, *to go before, to excel.*

Acquiescere, rei, re, *v.* in re. Adequitare, portæ; Syracusas.

Adjacere, mari, *v.* mare, *to lie near.*

Adnare navibus, naves, ad naves, *to swim to.*

Adverſari ei, *rarely* eum, *to oppoſe.*
Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, *to fall at one's knees.*
Advolare ei, ad eum; roſtra.
Adflare rei v. homini; rem v. hominem; aliquid alicui, *to breathe upon.*
Adulari ei, v. eum. Allabi oris; aures ejus, Virg. ad exta, Liv.
Apparere conſuli, *to attend;* ad ſolium Jovis; Res apparet mihi, *appears.*
Appropinquare Britanniæ, portam, ad portam, *to approach.*
Dominari cunctis oris, Virg. in cætera animalia, *to rule over,* Ovid.
Congruere alicui, cum re aliqua, inter ſe, *to agree.*
Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re.
Ignoſcere mihi, culpæ meæ, mihi culpam.
Impendere alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, *to hang over.*
Inceſſit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum, v. in eum, *ſeized.*
Incumbere toro; gladium, in gladium, *to fall upon;* labori, ad laudem, ad ſtudia, in ſtudium, curam, cogitationem, &c. *to apply to.*
Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio veſtitu, Ter.
Inhiare auro, bona ejus, *to gape after.* Innaſci agris, in agris, *to grow in.*
Inniti rei, re, in re; in aliquem, *to depend on.*
Inſultare rei & homini, v. hominem; fores; patientiam ejus, in miſeriam ejus; bonos, *to inſult over.*
Latet res mihi, v. me, *is unknown to me.* Mederi ei; cupiditates, *to cure.*
Miniſtrare ei, *to ſerve;* arma, *to furniſh.*
Moderari animo, gentibus; navim, omnia, *to rule.*
Nocere ei, *rarely* eum, Plaut.
Nubere alicui; in familiam: nupta ei & cum eo, Cic.
Obrepere ei & eum, *to creep upon;* in animos; ad honores.
Obſtrepere auribus & aures. Obtrectare ei, laudibus, ejus, *to detract from.*
Obumbrat ſibi vinea; ſolem nubes, *ſhades.* Palpari alicui & aliquem.
Paſciſci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, Sall. vitam pro laude, Virg.
Præſtolari alicui & aliquem.
Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, Ovid. ad genua, Liv. ad pedes, *to fall.*

To theſe may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative, but in proſe are uſually conſtrued with a prepoſition; as, 1. Contendo, certo, bello, pugno, concurro, coeo, alicui, *for* cum aliquo; 2. Diſtare, diſſentire, diſcrepare, diffidere, differre rei alicui, *for* a re aliqua. We alſo ſay, Contendunt, pugnant, diſtant, &c. inter ſe; *and* contendere, pugnare contra & adverſus aliquem.

Obſ. 4. Many verbs vary both their ſignification and conſtruction; as, *Timeo, metuo, formido, horreo tibi, & pro te*, I am afraid for you, *or* for your ſafety; but *timeo, horreo te*, v. *a te*, I fear or dread you as an enemy: So *Conſulo, proſpicio, caveo tibi*, I conſult *or* provide for your ſafety; but *conſulo te*, I aſk your advice; *proſpicio hoc*, I foreſee this: *Studere aliquid*, to deſire; *alicui*, to favour; *alicui rei, rem, & in re*, to apply to a thing. So, *Æmulor tibi*, I envy; *te*, I imitate; *Auſculto tibi*, I obey or liſten to; *te*, I hear; *Cupio tibi*, I favour; *rem*, I deſire; *Fenero, & -or tibi*, I lend you on intereſt; *ab te*, I borrow; *Metuiſti, ne non tibi iſtuc funeraret*, ſhould not return with intereſt, or bring uſury, Ter. And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

Obſ. 5. Verbs ſignifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a thing are conſtrued with the prep. *ad*; as,

Eo, vado, curro, propero, feſtino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, *&c.* ad locum, rem, *v.* hominem. Sometimes however in the poets they are conſtrued with the dative; as, It clamor cœlo, *for* ad cœlum, *Virg.*

3. *Verbs governing the Accuſative.*

XVIII. A Verb ſignifying actively governs the accuſative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. *Reverere parentes*, Reverence your parents.

Obſ. 1. Neuter verbs alſo govern the accuſative, when the noun after them has a ſignification ſimilar to their own; as,

Ire iter *or* viam; Pugnare pugnam *or* prælium: Currere curſum; Canere cantilenam; Vivere vitam; Ludere ludum; Sequi ſectam; Somniare ſomnium, *&c.* or when they are taken in a metaphorical ſenſe; as, Corydon ardebat Alexin, ſcil. propter, i. e. vehementer amabat, *Virg.* Currimus æquor, ſcil. per, *Id.* So, Comptos arſit adulteri crines, *Hor.* Saltare Cyclopa; olet hircum; Sulcos et vineta crepat mera, *Hor.* Vox hominem ſonat; Sudare mella, *Virg.* Si Xerxes Helleſponto juncto, et Athone perfoſſo, maria ambulaviſſet, terramque navigaſſet, ſc. per, *Cic.* Or when they have a kind of active ſenſe; as, Clamare aliquem nomine, *Virg.* Callere jura; Mærere mortem; Horret iratum mare, *Hor.*

Sometimes inſtead of the accuſative neuter verbs have an ablative; as, Ire itinere; dolere dolore, vicem ejus; gaudere gaudio; mori *v.* obire morte; vivere vitâ; Ludere aleam, *v.* â: manare, pluere, rorare, ſtillare, ſudare, aliquid *vel* aliquo. Erubeſcere jura, *Virg.* origine, *Tacit.* equo vehi, *Curt.*

Obſ. 2. Several verbs are uſed both in an active and neuter ſenſe; as,

Abhorrere famam, *to dread infamy*, Liv. a litibus; ab uxore ducenda, *to be averſe from*; Id. a meis moribus abhorret, *is inconſiſtent with*, Cic.

Abolere monumenta viri, *to abol-*

ifs, Virg. Iis Cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboleverat, Liv.

Adolere penates, *to burn*, Virg.

Ætas adolevit; adolevit ad ætatem, Plaut.

Declinare ictum, *to avoid*; loco; agmen aliquo, *to remove*.

Degenerare animos, *to weaken*; patri; a virtute majorum, *to degenerate*.

Durare adolescentes labore, *to harden*; Res durat ad breve tempus; In ædibus durare nequeo, Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, *to lay*; Hos ut sequar inclinat animus, *inclines*; acies inclinat, v. inclinatur, *gives way*.

Laborare arma, *to forge*; morbo, a dolore, e renibus, *to be ill*; de re aliqua, *to be concerned*.

Morari iter, *to stop*; in urbe, *to stay*; Hoc nihil moror, *I do not mind*.

Properare pecuniam hæredi, *Hor.* in urbem; ad unam sedem, Ovid.

Quadrare acervum, *to square*, Hor. aliquid ad normam; alicui, in aliquem, ad multa, *to fit*.

Suppeditare copiam dicendi, *to furnish*; suppeditat ei oratio, *is afforded*; Manubiæ in fundamenta vix suppeditârunt, *were sufficient*, Liv.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, hoc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, *&c.* are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, Id lacrumat, Id succensèt, *Ter.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. Tum prora avertit, sc. se. *Virg.* Flumina præcipitant, sc. se, *Id.* Obiit, sc. mortem, *Ter.* Cùm faciam vitulâ, sc. sacra, *Virg.* Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, Reddes dulce loqui, reddes ridere decorum; *for* dulcem sermonem, decorum risum, *Hor.*

XIX. *Recordor*, *memĭni*, *reminiscor*, and *obliviscor*, govern the accusative or genitive; as,

Recordor lectionis *or* lectionem,	*I remember the lesson.*
Obliviscor injuriæ *or* injuriam,	*I forget an injury.*

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, Memini videre virginem, *Ter.* Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset, *Cic.*

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, Memini alicujus, v. de aliquo. So *recordor*, when it signifies to recollect; as, Velim scire ecquid de te recordere, *Cic.*

4. *Verbs governing the Ablative.*

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

Abundat divitiis,	*He abounds in riches.*
Caret omni culpa,	*He has no fault.*

Verbs of plenty are, Abundo, affluo, exubĕro, redundo, suppedito, scatĕo, &c.; of want, Careo, egeo, indĭgeo, vaco, deficior, destituor, &c.

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, Eget auxilii, *Hor.* Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris, *Cic.*

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, Vacat a culpa, *Liv.*

XXI. *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor,* govern the ablative; as,

Utitur fraude, *He uses deceit.* Abutitur libris, *He abuses books.*

To these add, gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, victĭto, consto, laborо, *for* male me habeo, *to be ill;* pascor, epŭlor, nitor, &c.

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive; as, Potiri urbis, *Sal.* And we always say, *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command; never *rebus, imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor, *and* pascor, sometimes have an accusative; as, Potiri urbem, *Cic.* Munera fungi, *Tacit.* Pascuntur silvas, *Virg.* And in ancient writers *utor, abutor*, and *fruor*; as, Uti consilium, *Plaut.* Operam abutitur, *Ter.* *Depasco* and *depascor* always take an accusative; as, Depascitur artus, *Virg.*

§ 2. VERBS GOVERNING TWO CASES.

1. *Verbs governing two Datives.*

XXII. *Sum* taken for *affero (to bring)* governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Est mihi voluptati, It is, *or* brings a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after habeo, do, verto, relinquo, tribuo, fore, duco, and some others; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honor to you. *Id vertitur mihi vitio,* I am blamed for that. So, Misit mihi muneri; Dedit mihi dono; Habet sibi laudi; Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui, *Liv.*

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative; as, Est exitium pecori, *for* exitio; Dare aliquid alicui donum, *or* dono; Dare nuptum, *or* nuptui. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood; as, Dare crimini ei *sc.* id.

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied; as, Est exemplo, indicio, præsidio, usui, &c. *scil.* mihi, alicui, hominibus, or some such word. So, ponere, opponere, pignori, *sc.* alicui, *to pledge;*

Cănere receptui, *sc.* suis militibus, *to sound a retreat*; Habere, curæ, quæstui, odio, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despicatui, *&c. sc.* sibi.

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

2. *Verbs governing the Accusative and the Genitive.*

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing; as,

Arguit me furti,	He accuses me of theft.
Meipsum inertiæ condemno,	I condemn myself of lazines.
Illum homicidii absolvunt,	They acquit him of manslaughter.
Monet me officii,	He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, Accūso, ago, appello, arcesso, inquīro, arguo, defĕro, insimŭlo, postŭlo, allĭgo, astringo; of condemning, Damno, condemno, infāmo, noto; of acquitting, Absolvo, libĕro, purgo; of admonishing, Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio.

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de*; as, Monere aliquem officii, *or* de officio; Accusare aliquem furti, *or* de furto. De vi condemnati sunt, *Cic.*

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative; but in the ablative usually without a preposition; as, Damnare, postulare, absolvere eum criminis, *v.* capitis; & crimine, *vel* capite; also, Absolvo me peccato, *Liv.* And we always say, *Plectere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, *or* with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary; thus we say, *Culpo, reprehendo, taxo, traduco, vitupero, calumnior, criminor, excuso*, &c. *avaritiam alicujus*, and not *aliquem avaritiæ*. We sometimes also find *accuso, incuso*, &c construed in this manner; as, *Accusare inertiam adolescentium*, for *adolescentes inertiæ*, Cic. *Culpam arguo*, Liv. We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti*, rather than *ad quem*, to accuse one of theft, Cic.

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa*, &c. as, *Monec, accuso te illud*. We seldom however say, *Errorem te moneo*, but *erroris*, or *de errore*.

XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihili*; as,

Æstimo te magni,	I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, Æſtimo, exiſtimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo. They govern ſeveral other genitives; as, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, minoris, minimi, plurimi, maximi, nauci, pili, aſſis, nihili, teruncii, hujus.

Obſ. 1. *Æſtimo* ſometimes governs the ablative; as, *Æſtimo te magno, permagno, parvo*, ſcil. *pretio*: and alſo *nihilo*. We likewiſe ſay, *Pro nihilo habeo, puto, duco.*

Obſ. 2. *Æqui* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *conſulo*, as, *Hoc conſulo boni, æqui bonique facio*, I take this in good part.

Obſ. 3. The genitive after all theſe verbs is governed by ſome ſubſtantive underſtood; as, Arguere aliquem furti, *ſcil.* de crimine furti; Æſtimo rem magni, *ſcil.* pretii, *or* pro re magni pretii; Conſulo boni, *i. e.* ſtatuo *or* cenſeo eſſe factum *or* munus boni viri, *or* animi; Monere aliquem officii, *i. e.* officii cauâ, *or* de re *or* negotio officii.

3. *Verbs governing the Accuſative and the Dative.*

XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accuſative and dative; as,

Compăro Virgilium Homero,	I compare Virgil to Homer.
Suum cuique tribuito,	Give every one his own.
Narras fabulam ſurdo,	You tell a ſtory to a deaf man.
Eripuit me morti,	He reſcued me from death.

Or thus, any active verb may govern the accuſative and the dative, (when together with the object of the action, we expreſs the perſon or thing with relation to which it is exerted;) as,

Legam lectionem tibi, I will read the leſſon to you. *Emit librum mihi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves*, Virg. *Pauperies ſæpe ſuadet mala hominibus*, adviſes men to do bad things, Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus*, to order, to furniſh, Cæſ.

Obſ. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with ſome others, are often conſtrued with a preposition; as, Comparare unam rem cum alia, & ad aliam, *or* comparare res inter ſe: Eripuit me morti, morte, a *or* ex morte: Mittere epiſtolam alicui, *or* ad aliquem: Intendere telum alicui, *or* in aliquem: Incidere æri, in æs, *or* in ære: and ſo in many others.

Obſ. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accuſative, are conſtrued differently; as,

Circumdare mœnia oppido, or *oppidum mœnibus*, to ſurround a city with walls.

Intercludere commeatum alicui, or *aliquem commeatu*, to intercept one's proviſions.

Donare, prohibere rem alicui, or *aliquem re*, to give one a preſent, to hinder one from a thing.

Mactare hostiam Deo, *or* Deum hostiâ, *to sacrifice.*

Impertire salutem alicui, *or* aliquem salute, *to salute one.*

Interdixit Galliam Romanis, *or* Romanos Galliâ, *he debarred the Romans from Gaul.*

Induere, exuere vestem sibi, *or* se veste, *to put on, to put off one's cloaths.*

Levare dolorem alicui; dolorem alicujus; aliquem dolore, *to ease one's distress.*

Minari aliquid alicui, *or sometimes* alicui aliquo, *Cic. to threaten one with any thing;* Cæsasi gladio, *Sall.*

Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, & de hac re, *I congratulate you on this.*

Restituere alicui sanitatem, *or* aliquem sanitati, *to restore to health.*

Aspergere labem alicui, *or* aliquem labe, *to put an affront on one;* aram sanguine. Litare Deum sacris, & sacra Deo.

Excusare se alicui & apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem ei.

Exprobare vitium ei v. in eo, *to upbraid.*

Occupare pecuniam alicui, & apud aliquem, *i. e.* pecuniam fœnori locare, *to place at interest, Cic.*

Opponere se morti, & ad mortem. Renunciare id ei, & ad eum.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad;* as,

Porto, fero, lego, -as, præcipito, tollo, traho, duco, verto, incito, suscito; *also* Hortor, *and* invito, voco, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, lacesso; *thus,* Ad laudem milites hortatur; Ad prætorem hominem traxit, *Cic.* But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, Inferre Deos Latio, *for* in Latium, *Virg.* Invitare aliquem hospitio, *or* in hospitium, *Cic.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, Nubere alicui, scil. se; Cedere alicui, scil. locum; Detrahere alicui, scil. laudem; Ignoscere alicui, scil. culpam. And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, Dedit mihi libram, *He gave me a book,* for *to me.*

4. *Verbs governing two Accusatives.*

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus te pacem, We beg peace of thee.
Docuit me Grammaticam, He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, Rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, repposco, flagito, &c. Of teaching, Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celavit me hanc rem,* He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mihi,* or *celavit me de hac re.*

Obſ. 2. Verbs of aſking and teaching are often conſtrued with a prepoſition: as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo; Docere aliquem de re*, to inform; but we do not ſay, *docere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always ſay, with a prepoſition, Peto, exigo a v. abs te; Percontor, ſcitor, ſciſcitor, ex *or* a te, *or* te *without the prepoſition*; Interrogo, conſulto, te de re; Ut facias te obſecro; Exorat pacem divum, *for* divos, *Virg.* Inſtruo, inſtituo, formo, informo, aliquem, artibus, *in the abl. without a prep.* Imbuo eum artibus, in v. ab artibus. *Alſo* inſtruo ad rem, v. in re, ignorantiam alicujus. Erudire aliquem artes, de v. in re, ad rem. Formare ad ſtudium, mentem ſtudiis, ſtudia ejus.

Obſ. 3. The accuſative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *ſecundum* underſtood.

5. *Verbs governing the Accuſative and the Ablative.*

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, clothing, depriving, and ſome others, govern the accuſative and the ablative; as,

Onerat naves auro,	He loads the ſhip with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *Onĕro, cumŭlo, premo, opprĭmo, obruo*: Of unloading, *levo, exonĕro*, &c. Of binding, *aſtringo, ligo, allĭgo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo*, &c. Of looſing, *ſolvo, exſolvo, libĕro, laxo, expedio*, &c. Of depriving, *privo, nudo, orbo, ſpolio, fraudo, emungo*: Of clothing, *veſtio, amicio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, coronŏ*, & *calceo*: Of unclothing, *exuo, diſcingo*, &c.

Obſ. 1. The prepoſition, by which the ablative is governed after theſe verbs, is ſometimes expreſſed; as, Solvere aliquem ex catenis, *Cic.* Sometimes the ablative is to be ſupplied; as, Complet naves *ſc.* viris, *mans the ſhips, Virg.*

Obſ. 2. Several of theſe verbs likewiſe govern the genitive; as, Adoleſcentem ſuæ temeritatis implet, *Liv.* And alſo vary their conſtruction; as, Induit, exuit ſe veſtibus, *or* veſtes ſibi.

The CONSTRUCTION of PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When the active governs two caſes, the paſſive retains the latter caſe; as,

Accuſor furti,	I am accuſed of theft.
Virgilius comparatur Homero,	Virgil is compared to Homer.
Doceor grammaticam,	I am taught grammar.
Navis oneratur auro,	The ſhip is loaded with gold.

So Scio homines accuſatum iri furti: ——Eos ereptum iri morti, morte, a *vel* ex morte;——pueros doctum iri grammaticam;—— rem celatum iri mihi *vel* me; me celatum iri de re, *&c.*

Obſ. 1. Paſſive verbs are commonly conſtrued with the ablative and the prepoſition *a*; as,

Tu laudaris a me, which is equivalent to, Ego laudo te. Virtus diligitur a nobis; Nos diligimus virtutem. Gaudeo meum factum probari a te, *or* te probare meum factum: And ſo almoſt all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs alſo admit this prepoſition; *as*, Mare a ſole collucet, *Cic.* Phalaris non a paucis interiit, *Id.* So Cadere ab hoſte; Ceſſare a prœliis; Mori ab enſe; Pati, furari, aliquid ab aliquo, *&c.* *Alſo* Venire ab hoſtibus, to be ſold; Vapulare ab aliquo, Exulare ab urbe. Thus likewiſe many active verbs; *as*, Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expectare, emere, &c. ab aliquo.

The prep. is ſometimes underſtood after paſſive verbs; *as*, Deſcror conjuge, *Ovid.* Deſertus ſuis, *ſc.* a. *Tacit.* Tabulâ diſtinguitur undâ, qui navigat, *ſc.* ab unda, is kept from the water by a plank, *Juv.*

The prepoſition PER is alſo uſed in the ſame ſenſe with A; *as*, Per me defenſa eſt reſpublica, *or* a me; Per me reſtitutus; Per me *v.* a me factum eſt, *Cic.* But PER commonly marks the inſtrument, and A the principal efficient cauſe; *as*, Res agitur per creditores a rege, *Cic.*

Obſ. 2. Paſſive verbs ſometimes govern the dative, eſpecially among the poets; *as*,

Neque cernitur ulli, *for* ab ullo, *Virg.* Vix audior ulli, *Ovid.* Scriberis Vario, *for* a Vario, *Hor.* Honeſta bonis viris quæruntur, *for* a viris, *Cic.* VIDEOR, to ſeem, always governs the dative; *as*, Videris mihi, You ſeem to me: But we commonly ſay, Videris a me, You are ſeen by me; although not always; *as*, Nulla tuarum audita mihi, neque viſa ſororum, *for* a me, *Virg.*

Obſ. 3. Induor, amicior, cingor, accingor, *alſo* exuor *and* diſcingor, are often conſtrued with the accuſative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accuſatives in the active voice; *as*, Induitur veſtem, *or* veſte.

Obſ. 4. Neuter verbs are for the moſt part only uſed impersonally in the paſſive voice; unleſs when they are joined with a noun of a ſimilar ſignification to their own; *as*, Pugna pugnata eſt, *Cic.* Bellum militabitur, *Horat.* Paſſive impersonal verbs are moſt commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; *as*, Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venitur, *&c.* a nobis, ab illis, *&c.* We are ſtanding, weeping, *&c.* Bene poteſt vivi a me, *vel* ab aliquo; I *or* any perſon may live well. Proviſum eſt nobis optime a Deo; Reclamatum eſt ab omnibus, *all cried out againſt it*, *Cic.*

They alſo govern the ſame caſes, as when uſed perſonally; *as*, Ut majoribus natu aſſurgatur, ut ſupplicum miſereatur. *Cic.* Except the accuſative: For in theſe phraſes, Itur Athenas, pugnatum eſt biduum, dormitur totam noctem, the accuſative is not governed by the verb, but by the prepoſitions *ad* and *per* underſtood. We find, however, Tota mihi dormitur hyems; Noctes vigilantur amaræ; Oceanus raris ab orbe noſtro navibus aditur, *Tacit.*

The CONSTRUCTION of IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. An Impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

Expédit reipublicæ, It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; *as*,

Favetur mihi, I am favoured, and not Ego faveor. So Nocetur mihi, imperatur mihi, &c. We find however, Hæc ego procurare imperor; Ego cur invideor, *for* imperatur, invidetur mihi, *Hor.*

Obs. 1. These verbs, Potest, cœpit, incipit, definit, debet, *and* solet, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; *as*,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed; Mihi non potest noceri, I cannot be hurt; Negat jucunde posse vivi sine virtute, *Cic.* Per virtutem potest iri ad astra. Aliorum laudi & gloriæ invideri solet, The praise and glory of others use to be envied, *Id.*

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; *as*, Venit in mentem mihi hæc res, *vel* de hac re, *vel* hujus rei, *scil.* memoria; This thing came into my mind. Est curæ mihi hæc res, *vel* de hac re. Doleo, *vel* dolet mihi, id factum esse.

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; *as*, It rains, it shines, &c. And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to Impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; *as*, Nobis non licet peccare, *the same with* peccatum; Omnibus bonis expedit rempublicam esse salvam, *i. e.* Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis, *Cic.* Accidit, evenit, contigit, ut ibi essemus. These nominatives, hoc, illud, id, idem, quod, &c. are sometimes joined to Impersonal verbs; *as*, Idem mihi licet, *Cic.* Eadem licent, *Catull.*

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood; *as*, Faciat quod libet, *sc.* sibi, *Ter.* Stat casus renovare omnes, *sc.* mihi, I am resolved, *Virg.*

Exc. 1. *REFERT* and *INTEREST* require the genitive; *as*,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

Obs. 1. Some think mea, tua, sua, &c. to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either cujus interest, *and* quorum interest; *or* cuja interest, *from* cujus, a, um.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *interest* are often joined with these nominatives, Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c. also with common nouns; and with these genitives, Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris; *as*, Hoc parvi refert; Illud mea magni interest, *Cic.*

Usque adeo magni refert studium, *Lucr.* Incessus in gravida, refert, *Plin.*

They are frequently conſtrued with theſe adverbs, Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maxime, vehementer, minime, &c. *as*, Faciam, quod maxime reipublicæ intereſſe judicabo, *Cic.* Sometimes inſtead of the genit. they take the accuſative with the prep. *ad*; *as*, Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Perſæ quid rerum gerant? Of what importance is it? &c. *Plaut* Magni ad honorem noſtrum intereſt, *Cic.* rarely the dative; *as*, Dic. quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi, &c. *Hor.* Sometimes they are placed abſolutely; *as*, Magnopere intereſt opprimi Dolobellam, *it is of great importance*, *Cic.* Permultum intereſt, qualis primus aditus ſit, *Id.* Adeone eſt fundata leviter fides, ut ubi ſim, quam qui ſim, magis referat? *Liv.* Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus hunc tu moribus inſtituas, *Juv.*

Obſ. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *intereſt* is governed by ſome ſubſtantive underſtood, with which the poſſeſſives *mea*, *tua*, *ſua*, &c. likewiſe agree; *as*, Intereſt Ciceronis, *i. e.* eſt inter negotia Ciceronis: Refert patris, *i. e.* refert ſe hæc res ad negotia patris: So intereſt mea eſt inter negotia mea.

Exc. II. Theſe five *MISERET*, *POENITET*, *PUDET*, *TÆDET*, and *PIGET*, govern the accuſative of a perſon, with the genitive of a thing; as,

Miſeret me tui, I pity you. *Tædet me vitæ*, I am weary of life. *Pœnitet me peccati*, I repent of my ſin.

Obſ. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* underſtood, or by ſome other ſubſtantive of a ſignification ſimilar to that of the verb with which it is joined; *as*, Miſeret me tui, *that is*, negotium *or* miſeratio tui miſeret me.

Obſ. 2. An infinitive or ſome part of a ſentence may ſupply the place of the genitive; *as*, Pœnitet me peccaſſe, *or* quod peccaverim. The accuſative is frequently underſtood; *as*, Scelerum ſi bene pœnitet, *ſcil.* nos. *Horat.*

Obſ. 3. *Miſeret*, *pœnitet*, &c. are ſometimes uſed perſonally, eſpecially when joined with theſe nominatives, *hoc*, *id*, *quod*, &c. *as*, Ipſe ſui miſeret, *Lucr.*; Nonne hæc te pudent? *Ter.* Nihil, quod pœnitere poſſit, facias, *Cic.*

We ſometimes find *miſeret* joined with two accuſatives, *as*, Menedemi vicem miſeret me, *ſcil.* ſecundum, *or* quod ad. *Ter.*

Obſ. 4. The preterites of *miſeret*, *pudet*, *tædet*, and *piget*, when uſed in the paſſive form, govern the ſame caſes with the active; *as*, Miſeritum eſt me tuarum fortunarum, *Ter.* We likewiſe find *miſereſcit* and *miſeretur* uſed impersonally; *as*, Miſereſcit me tui, *Ter.*; Miſeretur te fratrum; Neque me tui, neque tuorum liberorum miſereri poteſt, *Cic.*

Exc. III. *DECET*, *DELECTAT*, *JUVAT*, and *OPORTET*, govern the accuſative of a perſon, with the infinitive; as,

Delectat me ſtudere,	It delights me to ſtudy.
Non decet te rixari,	It does not become you to ſcold.

Obſ. 1. Theſe verbs are ſometimes uſed perſonally; *as*, Parvum parva decent, *Hor.* Eſt aliquid quod non opporteat, etiamſi liceat, *Cic.* Hæc facta ab illo oportebant, *Ter.*

Obſ. 2. *Decet* is ſometimes conſtrued with the dative; *as*, Ita nobis decet, *Ter.*

Obſ. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the ſubjunctive mode, *ut* being underſtood; as,

Sibi quiſque conſulat oportet, Cic. Or with the perfect participle *eſſe* or *fuiſſe* being underſtood; as, *Communicatum oportuit; manſum oportuit; Adoleſcenti morem geſtum oportuit*, The young man ſhould have been humoured, Ter.

Obſ. 4. *Fallit, fugit, præterit, latet*, when uſed impersonally, alſo govern the accuſative with the infinitive; *as*, In lege nullâ eſſe ejuſmodi caput, non te fallit; De Dionyſio fugit me ad te antea ſcribere, *Cic.*

NOTE. *Attinet, pertinet*, & *ſpectat*, are conſtrued with *ad; Ad rempublicam pertinet, me conſervari*, Cic. And ſo perſonally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. *Res ad arma ſpectat*, looks, points, Cic.

The CONSTRUCTION of the INFINITIVE.

XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

Cupio diſcere, I deſire to learn.

Obſ. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; *as*, Horatius eſt dignus legi, *Quinctil.* And ſometimes depends on a ſubſtantive; *as*, Tempus equûm fumantia ſolvere colla, *Virg.*

Obſ. 2. The word governing the infinitive is ſometimes underſtood; *as*, Mene incepto deſiſtere victam, *ſcil.* decet, *or* par eſt, *Virg.* Videre eſt. Dicere non eſt, *ſcil.* copia *or* facultas, *Horat.* And ſometimes the infinitive itſelf is to be ſupplied; *as*, Socratem fidibus docuit, *ſcil.* canere, *Cic.* *So* Diſcere, ſcire fidibus.

Obſ. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, The name or noun of the verb; becauſe it is both joined with an adjective like a ſubſtantive, as, *Velle ſuum cuique eſt*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewiſe ſupplies the place of a noun, not only in the nominative, but alſo in all the oblique caſes; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe eſt*, Cic. *Didiciſſe fideliter artes emollit mores*, Ovid. 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare*, for *cantandi*, or *cantûs*, Virg. 3. In the dative, *Paratus ſervire*, for *ſervituti*, Sall. 4. In the accuſative, *Da mihi fallere*, for *artem fallendi*, Horat. *Quod faciam ſupereſt, præter amare, nihil*, Ovid. 5. In the vocative, *O vivere noſtrum, ut non ſentientibus effluis!* For *vita noſtra.* 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari*, for *amore*, or *qui amétur*, Virg.

Obſ. 4. Inſtead of the infinitive a different conſtruction is often uſed after verbs of *doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping*; in ſhort, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitat ita*

facere, or more frequently, *an*, *num*, or *utrum ita futurus sit*; *Dubitavit an faceret necne*; *Non dubito quin fecerit*. *Vis me facere*, or *ut faciam*. *Metuit tangi*, or *ne tangatur*. *Spero te venturum esse*, or *fore ut venias*. *Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem*, Cic. *Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur*, Cæs.

Obs. 5. *To*, which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid*, *dare*, *need*, *make*, *see*, *hear*, *feel*, and some others; as, *I bid him do it*: and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, I am sent to complain, *Mittor questum*, or *ut querar*, &c. Ready to hear, *Promptus ad audiendum*; Time to read, *Tempus legendi*; Fit to swim, *Aptus natando*; Easy to say, *Facile dictu*; I am to write, *Scripturus sum*; A house to let, *or more properly*, to be let, *Domus locanda*: He was left to guard the city, *Relictus est ut tueretur urbem*.

The CONSTRUCTION of PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, and SUPINES.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

Amans virtutem, Loving virtue. *Carens fraude*, Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mihi, Suspected by me; Suspectiores regibus, *Sall.* *Invisus mihi*; hated by me, or hateful to me: Indies invisior, *Suet.* Occulta, et maribus non invisa solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra, *unseen*, *Cic.*

EXOSUS, *PEROSUS*, and often also *PERTÆSUS*, govern the accusative; as, Tædas exosa jugales, *Ovid.* Plebs consulum nomen haud secus quam regum perosa erat, *Liv.* Pertæsus ignaviam suam; semet ipse, *displeased with*, *Suet.* vitam, *weary of*, *Justin.* levitatis, *Cic.*

Verbals in BUNDUS govern the case of their own verbs; as, Gratulabundus patriæ, *Just.* Vitabundus castra hostium, *Liv.* So sometimes also nouns; as, Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus, *Cic.* Insidiæ consuli, *Sall.* Domum reditionis spe sublatâ, *Cæs.* Spectatio ludos, *Plaut.*

Obs. 2. These verbs, *do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *facio*, *habeo*, *comperio*, with the perfect participle, form a periphrasis similar to what we use in English; as, Compertum habeo, *for* comperi, *I have found*, *Sall.* Effectum dabo, *for* efficiam; Inventum tibi curabo, et adductum tuum Pamphilum, *i. e.* inveniam et adducam, *Ter.* Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, Tradere ei gentes diripiendas, *or* ad diripiendum, *Cic.* Rogo, accipio, do aliquid utendum, *or* ad utendum; Misit mihi librum legendum, *or* ad legendum, &c.

Obſ. 3. Theſe verbs, *curo, habeo, mando, loco, conduco, do, tribuo, mitto*, &c. are elegantly conſtrued with the participle in *dus* inſtead of the infinitive; as, Funus faciendum curavi, *for* fieri, *or* ut fieret: Columnas ædificandas locavit, *Cic.*

The CONSTRUCTION of GERUNDS.

XXXII. Gerunds are conſtrued like ſubſtantive nouns; as,

Studendum eſt mihi, I muſt ſtudy. *Aptus ſtudendo*, Fit for ſtudying.
Tempus ſtudendi, Time of ſtudy.

But more particularly;

I. The Gerund in DUM with the verb *eſt* governs the dative; as,

Legendum eſt mihi, I muſt read. *Moriendum eſt omnibus*, All muſt die.
So *Scio legendum eſſe mihi; moriendum eſſe omnibus*, &c.

Obſ. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or neceſſity; and may be reſolved into *oportet, neceſſe eſt*, or the like, and the infinitive or the ſubjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, Omnibus eſt moriendum, *or* Omnibus neceſſe eſt mori, *or* ut moriantur; *or* Neceſſe eſt ut omnes moriantur. Conſulendum eſt tibi a me, *I muſt conſult for your good; for* Oportet ut conſulam tibi, *Cic.*

Obſ. 2. The dative is often underſtood; as, Orandum eſt, ut ſit mens ſana in corpore ſano, *ſc.* tibi, *Juv.* Hic, vincendum, aut moriendum, militi, eſt, *ſc.* vobis, *Liv.* Deliberandum eſt diu, quod ſtatuendum eſt ſemel, *ſc.* tibi *vel* alicui, *P. Syr.*

II. The gerund in *DI* is governed by ſubſtantives or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupidus diſcendi*, Deſirous of learning.

Obſ. This gerund is ſometimes conſtrued with the genitive plural; as, Facultas agrorum condonandi, *for* agros, *Cic.* Copia ſpectandi comœdiarum, *for* comœdias, *Ter.* But chiefly with pronouns; as, In caſtra venerunt ſui purgandi cauſâ, *Cæſ.* Veſtri adhortandi cauſa, *Liv.* Ejus videndi cupidus, *ſc.* fœminæ, *Ter.* The gerund here is ſuppoſed to govern the genitive like a ſubſtantive noun.

III. The gerund in *DO* of the dative caſe is governed by adjectives ſignifying uſefulneſs or fitneſs; as,

Charta utilis ſcribendo, Paper uſeful for writing.

Obſ. 1. Sometimes the adjective is underſtood; as, *Non eſt ſolvendo*, ſcil. *par*, or *habilis*, He is not able to pay. In finis cenſendo factus eſt, *Liv.*

Obſ. 2. This gerund is ſometimes governed alſo by verbs; as, Adeſſe ſcribendo, *Cic.* Aptat habendo enſem, *for wearing*; Virg.

IV. The gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case, is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,

Promptus ad audiendum, Ready to hear.
Attentus inter docendum, Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, Ante domandum, *Virg.* Ob absolvendum, *Cic.* Circa movendum, *Quinctil.* Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus*, I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

Pœna a peccando absterret, Punishment frightens from sinning.

Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

Memoria excolendo augetur, The memory is improved by exercising it.
Defessus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Est tempus legendi*, or *legere*; only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, Cum Tisidium vocaretur ad imperandum, *i. e.* ut ipsi imperaretur, *to receive orders*, *Sall.* Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius, Sic enim antiqui loquebantur, *Cic.* i. e. ut tibi imperetur. Urit videndo, *i. e.* dum videtur, *Virg.*

Gerunds turned into participles in dus.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.		By the participle or Gerundive.
Petendum est mihi pacem,		Pax est petenda mihi.
Tempus petendi pacem,	*or more frequently*	Tempus petendæ pacis.
Ad petendum pacem,		Ad petendam pacem.
A petendo pacem,		A petenda pace.

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive; Inita sunt consilia urbis delendæ, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extinguendi, *Cic.*

Dat Perpetiendo labori idoneus, *Colum.* Capessendæ reipublicæ habilis, *Tac.* Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis, *Liv.* Oneri ferendo est, sc. aptus v. habilis, *Ovid.* Natus miseriis ferendis,

alſo joined to comparatives; as, Forma viri aliquantum amplior humanâ, *Liv.*

QUAM is joined to the poſitive or ſuperlative in different ſenſes; as, Quam difficile eſt! *How difficult it is!* Quam crudelis, *or* Ut crudelis eſt! *How cruel he is!* Flens quam familiariter, *very familiarly, Ter. So* quam ſeverè, *very ſeverely, Cic.* quam latè, *very widely, Cæs.* Tam multa, quam, *&c. as many things as, &c.* Quam maximas poteſt copias armat, *as great as poſſible, Sall.* Quam maximas gratias agit, quam primum, quam ſæpiſſime, *Cic.* Quam quiſque peſſimè fecit, tam maximè tutus eſt, *Sall.*

FACILE, for *haud dubiè*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to ſuperlatives or words of a ſimilar meaning; as, Facilè doctiſſimus, facilè princeps, *&c.* præcipuus. LONGE, to comparatives or ſuperlatives, rarely to the poſitives; as, Longè eloquentiſſimus Plato, *Cic.* Pedibus longè melior Lycus, *Virg.*

2. CUM, when, is conſtrued with the indicative or ſubjunctive, oftener with the latter; DUM, whilſt, or how long, with the indicative; as, Dum hæc aguntur; Ægroto, dum anima eſt, ſpes eſſe dicitur, *Cic.* Donec eris felix, multos numerabis amicos, *Ovid.* DUM and DONEC, for *uſquedum*, until, ſometimes with the indicative and ſometimes with the ſubjunctive; as, Operior, dum iſta cognoſco, *Cic.* Haud deſinam, donec perfecero, *Ter.* So QUOAD, for *quamdiu, quantum, quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, Quoad Catilina fuit in urbe; Quoad tibi æquum videbitur; quoad poſſem & liceret; quoad progredi potuerit amentia, *Cic.* But QUOAD, until, oftener with the ſubjunctive; as, Theſſalonicæ eſſe ſtatueram, quoad aliquid ad me ſcriberes, *Cic.* but not always; Non faciam finem regandi, quoad nunciatum eſit te feciſſe, *Cic.* The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *fieri* is elegantly added to *quoad*; as, Quoad ejus facere poteris; Quoad ejus fieri poſſit, *Cic. Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or ſome ſuch word underſtood. Quoad corpus, quoad animam, *for* ſecundum, *or* quod attinet ad corpus *vel* animam, as to the body or ſoul, is eſteemed by the beſt grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. POSTQUAM or POSTEAQUAM, after, is uſually joined with the Indic. ANTEQUAM, PRIUSQUAM, before; SIMUL, SIMULAC, SIMULATQUE, SIMUL UT, as ſoon as; UBI, when, ſometimes with the Ind. and ſometimes with the Subj. as, Antequam dico *or* dicam, *Cic.* Simulac perſenſit, *Virg.* Simul ut videro Curionem, *Cic.* Hæc ubi dicta dedit, *Liv.* Ubi ſemel quis pejeraverit, ei credi poſtea non oportet, *Cic.* So NÆ, truly; as, Næ ego homo ſum infelix, *Ter.* Næ tu, ſi id feciſſes, melius famæ conſuluiſſes, *Cic.* But NE, not, with the Imperative, or more elegantly with the ſubjunctive; as, Ne jura, *Plaut.* Ne poſt conferas culpam in me, *Ter.* Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horæ dederis diſcrimen, *Liv.*

4. QUASI, CEU, TANQUAM, PERINDE, when they denote reſemblance, are joined with the Indic. Fuit, olim, quaſi ego ſum, ſenex, *Plaut.* Adverſi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti conſligunt, *Virg.*

Hæc omnia perinde ſunt, ut aguntur, *Cic.* But when uſed ironically, they have the ſubjunctive; as, Quaſi de verbo, non de re laboretur, *Cic.*

5. UTINAM, O SI, UT for *utinam*, I wiſh, take the ſubjunctive; as, Utinam ea res ei voluptati ſit, *Cic.* O mihi præteritos referat ſi Jupiter annos, *Virg.* Ut illum dii deæque perdant, *Ter.*

6. UT, when or after, takes the indicative; as, Ut diſceſſit, venit, &c. ¶ Alſo for *quam*, or *quomodo*, how! as, Ut valet! Ut falſus animi eſt! Ut ſæpe ſumma ingenia in occulto latent! *Plaut.* ¶ Or when it ſimply denotes reſemblance; as, Ut tute es, ita omnes cenſes eſſe, *Plaut.* ¶ In this ſenſe it ſometimes has the ſubjunctive; as, Ut ſementem feceris, ita metes, *Cic.*

7. QUIN, for CUR NON, takes the Indicative; as, Quin continetis vocem indicem ſtultitiæ veſtræ, *Cic.* ¶ For IMO, nay or but, the Indicative or Imperative; as, Quin eſt paratum argentum, quin tu hoc audi, *Ter.* ¶ For UT NON, QUI, QUÆ, QUOD NON, or QUO MINUS, the Subjunctive; as, Nulla tam facilis res, quin difficilis fiet, quum invitus facias, *Ter.* Nemo eſt, quin malit; Facere non poſſum, quin ad te mittam, *I cannot help ſending;* Nihil abeſt, quin ſim miſerrimus, *Cic.*

The GOVERNMENT of ADVERBS.

XL. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

Pridie ejus diei,	The day before that day.
Ubique gentium,	Every where.
Satis eſt verborum,	There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, Interea, poſtea, inde, tunc; as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *Poſtea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique*, *ubicunque*, *ubivis*, *ubiubi*, &c. Alſo, Eo, huc, huccine, unde, uſquam, nuſquam, longe, ibidem; *as*, Ubi, quo, quovis, &c. *alſo*, uſquam, nuſquam, unde terrarum, *vel* gentium; longe gentium; ibidem loci; eo audaciæ, vecordiæ, miſeriarum, &c. *to that pitch of boldneſs, madneſs, miſery*, &c. 3. Of quantity, Abunde, affatim, largiter, nimis, ſatis, parum, minimè; *as*, Abundè gloriæ, affatim divitiarum, largiter auri, ſatis loquentiæ, ſapientiæ parum eſt illi *vel* habet. *He has enough of glory, riches*, &c. Minimè gentium, *by no means.*

Some add *ergo* and *inſtar*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the ſake of virtue, Cic. *Inſtar montis*, like a mountain, Virg.: But theſe are properly nouns.

Obſ. 1. Theſe adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, becauſe they imply in themſelves the force of a ſubſtantive; as, *Potentiæ gloriæque abundè adeptus*, the ſame with *abundantiam gloriæ*; or *res*,

locus, or *negotium* and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interest loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say *pridie, postridie ejus diei*, seldom *diem*; but *pridie, postridie, Kalendas, Nonas, Idus, ludos Apollinares, natalem ejus, absolutionem ejus*, &c. rarely *Kalendarum*, &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

En hostis, *or* hostem; Ecce miserum hominem, *Cic.* Sometimes a dative is added; as, Ecce tibi Strato, *Ter.* Ecce duas *(scil. aves)* tibi, Daphni, *Virg.* In like manner is construed *hem* put for *ecce*; as, Hem tibi Davum, *Ter.* But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

Omnium optimè loquitur,	He speaks the best of all.
Convenienter naturæ,	Agreeably to nature.
Venit obviam ei,	He came to meet him.
Proxime castris or *castra*,	Next the camp.

The CONSTRUCTION of PREPOSITIONS.

1. *PREPOSITIONS governing the Accusative.*

AD astra, *to the stars*; religari ad aſſerem, *to be bound to a plank*; ad diem veniam, ſolvam, &c. *at* or *on*; ad portam, oſtium, fores, *at, before*; ad urbem, Tiberim, *near, at*: ad templa ſupplicatio, *in*; ad ſummum, *at moſt*; ad ſummam, *on the whole*, Cic.; ad ultimum, extremum, *at laſt, finally*; ad *v.* in ſpeciem, *to appearance*; mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatalis ad interitum; ſenius ad ſeveritatem, *for, with reſpect to*, Cic.; ad vivum, ſc. corpus, *to the quick*; ad judicem agere, *before*; nihil ad Cæſarem, *in compariſon of*; numero ad duodecim, *to the number of*; omnes ad unum, *to a man*; ad hoc, *beſides*; ad vulgi opinionem, *according to*; homo ad unguem factus, *an accompliſhed man*; herbæ ad lunam meſſæ, *by the light of*, Virg.; ad tempus venit, *at*; Ira brevis eſt & ad tempus, *for*; ad tempus conſilium capiam, *according to*, Cic.; ad decem annos, *after*; annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about*, Cic.; nebula erat ad multum diei, *for a great part of the day*, Liv.; ad pedes jacēre, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus eſſe, *at*; ad manus venire, *to come to a cloſe engagement*; ad libellam deberi, *to a farthing, no more and no leſs*; ad hæc viſa auditaque, *upon ſeeing and hearing theſe things*, Liv.

AD ſeems ſometimes to be taken adverbially; as, Ad duo millia cæſa ſunt; ad mille hominum amiſſum eſt; ad ducenti perierunt, *about*, Liv.

APUD forum, *at*; apud me cænabis, *at my houſe*; apud ſenatum, judices *v.* aliquem dicere, *before*; apud majores noſtros, *among*; apud

Xenophontem, *in the book of*; Eſt mihi fides, *vel* valeo, apud illum, *I have credit with him*; facio te apud illum deum, *Ter.*

ANTE diem, focum, &c. *before.*

ADVERSUS, *v.* -um; CONTRA hoſtes, *againſt*; adverſus infimos juſtitia eſt ſervanda, *towards*; adverſum hunc loqui, *to*, Ter. Lerina adverſum Antipolim, *over againſt*, Plin.

CIS *vel* CITRA flumen, *on this ſide*; citra neceſſitatem, *without*; Ede citra eruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem, *Sen.*

CIRCUM & CIRCA regem, *about*; Varia circa hæc opinio, *Plin.* ERGA amicos, *towards.* EXTRA muros; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, ſortem, *without*; nemo extra te, *beſides*; extra conjurationem, *not concerned in*, Sall.

INFRA tectum, *below the roof.*

INTER fratres, *among*; Inter & ſuper cænam, *during, in the time of*; inter hæc parata, *during theſe preparations*, Sall. Inter tot annos, *in*, Cic. Inter diem; *whence*, interdiu, *in the day time*; inter ſe amant, *they love one another*; Quaſi non norimus nos inter nos, Ter.

INTRA privatos parietes, intra paucos, annos, *within*; intra famam eſt, *leſs than report*, Quinct.

JUXTA macellum, *near the ſhambles.*

OB lucrum, *for gain*; ob oculos, *before*; ob induſtriam *for* de induſtria, *on purpoſe*, Plaut.

PENES quem, *or* quem penes, *in the power of*; Penes te es? *Are you in your ſenſes?* Hor.

PER agros, *through*; per vim, per ſcelus, *by*; per anni tempus, per ætatem licet, *for, by reaſon of.*

PONE caput, *behind.*

POST hoc tempus, *after*; poſt tergum, *behind*; poſt homines natos, poſt hominum memoriam, *ſince the world began.*

PRÆTER te nemo, *no body, beſides or except*; præter caſam fugere, *beyond*; præter legem, morem, æquum & bonum, ſpem, opinionem, &c. *contrary to, againſt, beyond*; præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, *above*; præter ripam ire, *along, near*; præter oculos, *before*, Cic.

PROPTER virtutem, *for, on account of*; propter aquæ rivum, *near, hard by*, Virg.

SECUNDUM facta & virtutes tuas, *according to*, Ter. ſecundum littus, ſecundum aurem vulneratus eſt, *near to*; in actione ſecundum vocem vultus plurimum valet; ſecundum patrem tu es proximus, *after, next to*; Prætor ſecundum me decrevit, ſententiam, dedit, *for, in my favour*, Cic.

SECUS viam, *by, along.*

SUPRA terram, *above.*

TRANS mare, *over, beyond.*

ULTRA oceanum, *beyond.*

To prepoſitions governing the accuſative are commonly added CIRCITER, PROPE, USQUE & VERSUS; as, Circiter meridiem, *about mid-day*; prope muros, *near the walls*; uſque Puteolos, Tharſam uſque, *as far as*; Orientem verſus, *towards the eaſt.* But in theſe *ad* is

understood; which we find sometimes expressed; as, Prope ad annum, Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala, Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cæs. In Italiam versus, Cic.

2. *PREPOSITIONS governing the Ablative.*

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, *by or from*; a puero, *vel* pueris, a pueritia, incunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. *from a child, ever since childhood*; ab ovo usque ad mala, *from the beginning to the end of supper*; a manu, sc. servus, *an amanuensis or clerk*; ad manum, *a waiting man*; a pedibus, *a footman*; a latere principis, *an attendant*. So a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, cyathis, &c. *a secretary, accountant, &c.* fores a nobis, *for* nostræ. Injuria ab illo, *for* illius, Ter. a cœna, *after*; Secundus, tertius a Romulo; ictus ab latere, *on or in*; a senatu stare, *for, in defence of*; ab oculis doleo, Plaut. ab ingenio improbus, a pecunia & militibus imparatus, *as to, with respect to*, Cic. Est calor a sole; omissiores ab re, *too careless about money*; a villa mercenarium vidi, Ter.

ABSQUE causa, *without*; absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem, *i. e.* si tu non esses, nisi tu esses, *but for you, had it not been for you*, Ter. Absque *is chiefly used by comic writers*; sine, *by orators*.

CLAM patre & patrem, *without the knowledge of*.

CORAM omnibus, *before, in the presence of*.

CUM exercitu, *with*; testis mecum est annulus, *in my possession*, Ter. cum prima luce, *at break of day*; cum imperio esse, *in*; cum primis, in primis, *in the first place*; cum metu dicere, cum lætitia vivere, cum cura, &c. Cic. *We say*, mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum; *rarely* cum me, cum te, &c. *and* quocum *or* cum quo, quibuscum & cum quibus.

DE lana caprina rixantur, *about, concerning*; De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est, *of*; de loco superiore, *from*; de die, *by day*; de nocte, *by night*; de integro, *anew, afresh*; de v. ex improviso, *unexpectedly*; de v. ex industria, *on purpose*; de meo, *at my expense*; Id de lucro putato esse, *clear gain*, Ter.; de v. ex compacto agere, *by agreement*; de transverso, *cross-wise, athwart*; de v. ex ejus sententia, consilio, *according to*; qua v. hac de causa, *for*; homo de plebe; templum de marmore, *of*; de scripto dicere, *to read a speech*; de Pilio emit, *from*, Cic. De servis fidelissimus; De ipsius exercitu non amplius hominum mille cecidit, Nep. Robur de exercitu, Liv. Adolescens de summo loco, Plaut. De procul aspicere, Id.

E foro, Ex ædibus, *from, out of*; e contrario, v. contraria parte, *on the contrary*; e regione, *over against*; e republica, e re alicujus, *for the good of*; statim e somno, ex fuga, ex tanta properantia, aliud ex alio malum, *from, after*; e vestigio, *out of hand, immediately*; poculum ex auro; ex equo pugnare, *on horse back*; facere pugnam ex commodo, *on advantageous ground*, Sall.; diem ex die expectare, *from day to day, day after day*; ex ordine, *in order*; magna ex parte, *for the most part*; ex supervacuo, *superfluously*; ex tua dignitate v. virtute, ex

decreto senatûs, e natura, *according to*; *so* vulgus ex veritate pauca, ex opinione multa æstimat; ex v. de more, ad v. in morem alicujus. Ex animo, *from the heart*; Insolentia ex prosperis rebus, e via languere, ex doctrina nobilis, *on account of*; ex usu est tibi, *of advantage*; ex eo die, *since*; ex amicis certis certissimus, *of or among*; ex pedibus laborare, *to be ill of the gout*, Cic. E re nata, *as the matter stands*, Ter. Commenta mater est, esse ex alio viro, Nescio quo, puerum natum, *by*, Id.

PRO gloria certare, *for*; Rati noctem pro se, *favourable to them*, Sall. Hoc est pro me, Cic. pro templo, tribunali, concione, rostris, castris, foribus, *before*; pro sua dignitate, sapientia, &c. pro potestate cogere, pro tempore, re, loco, suo jure, *according to*; est pro prætore, pro te molam, comes facundus pro vehiculo est, *for, instead of*; pro viribus, pro parte virili, pro sua quisque parte v. facultate, *to one's ability or power*; Parum tibi pro eo, quod a te habeo, reddidi, Cic. *in comparison of, considering*; pro ut, pro eo ac, pro eo ut mereor, *as I deserve*; pro se quisque, uterque, &c. *for his own part*; pro rata parte, pro portione, *in proportion*; pro cive se gerit; agere pro victoribus; pro suo uti; pro rupto fœdus habet, *for, as*; *so* pro certo, infecto, comperto, nihilo, concesso, &c. habeo, duco. Pro occiso relictus est, Cic.

PRÆ se pugionem tulit, *before*; speciem præ se boni viri fert, *pretends to be*, Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere, *for, because of*; illum præ me contempsi, *in comparison of*; *So the adv.* præut; *as*, præut hujus rabies quæ dabit, Ter.

PALAM populo, omnibus, *before, with the knowledge of.*

SINE labore, *without*; sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querela, impensa, &c.; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunis, sede, &c. Cic.

Capulo TENUS, *up to the hilt*. *Tenus* is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing. as, *Cumarum tenus*, as far as *Cumæ*: or when we speak of things, of which we have by nature only two; as, Oculorum, aurium, narium, labrorum, lumborum, crurum tenus, *up to*. *We also find* Corcyræ tenus, & ostiis tenus, Liv. Colchis tenus, Flor. Pectoribus tenus, Ovid.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added PROCUL; as, *Procul domo*, far from home; but here *a* is understood which is also often expressed; as, Procul a patria, *Virg.* Procul ab ostentatione, *Quinct.* Culpa est procul a me, *Ter.*

3. *PREPOSITIONS governing the Accus. and Abl.*

XLIV. The prepositions *in, sub, super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN, when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

IN urbem ire, *into*; amor in patriam, in te benignus, towards; in lucem, until day; in eam sententiam, to that purpose, on that head; in rem tuam est, for your advantage; in utramque partem disputare, on both sides, for and against; litura in nomen, *on*, Cic. potestas in filium, *over*; in aliquem dicere, *against*; mirum in modum, *after*; in pedes stare, in aurem dormire, *on*; in os laudare, *to*, *before*; in v. inter patres lectus, into the number of; in vulgus probari, spargere, &c. *among*; crescit in dies, in singulos dies, omnes in dies, every day; in diem posterum, proximum, decimum, *against*; in diem vivere, to live from hand to mouth, not think of to-morrow; Est in diem, will happen sometime after, *Ter.* Induciæ in duos menses datæ, in hunc diem, annum, &c. *for*; Ternis assibus in pedem, v. in singulos pedes, transegit, He bargained for three shillings a foot, or for every foot; So in jugerum, militem, capita, naves, &c. In medimna singula, H. S. quinos denos dedisti, *Cic.*

IN portu navigo, in tempore, *in*; esse in potestate, v. in potestatem, honore, v. honorem, mente v. mentem; in manu v. manibus esse; habere, tenere, in one's power, on hand; in amicis, *among*; in oculis, *before*. Occisus est in provinciam, *for* in provincia, *Sall.* In pueritia, adolescentia, senectute, absentia, *for* puer *or* pueri, when a boy *or* boys, &c. Hoc in tempore, *Nep.* In loco fratris diligere, *for* ut fratrem, *Ter.*

SUB terras ibit imago, sub aspectum cadit, *under*; sub ipsum fumus, near, just before, *Hor.* sub lucem, ortum lucis, noctem, vesperam, brumam, i. e. ineipiente luce, &c. at the dawn of day, &c. sub idem tempus, *about*; sub eas literas recitatæ sunt tuæ, sub festos dies, *after*, *Cic.*

SUB muro, rege, pedibus, &c. *under*; sub urbe, *near*, *Ter.* sub ea conditione, v. -em, on *or* with.

SUPER Numidiam, above, beyond; super ripas, *upon*; super hæc; super morbum etiam fames affixit, *besides*, *Liv.* super arbore, fronde super viridi, *upon*; super hac re scribere, his accensa super, *concerning*; alii super alios trucidantur, *Liv.* Super cœnam, super vinum et epulas, *for* inter, *during*, *Curt.* Nec super ipse suâ molitur laude laborem, *for*, *Virg.*

SUBTER terram v. terra, *under*.

Obs. 1. When prepositions do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are, Ante, circa, clam, coram, contra, infra, intra, juxta, palam, pone, post, propter, secus, subter, super, supra, ultra. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, Longo post tempore venit, sc. post id tempus. Adversus, juxta, propter, secus, secundum, & clam, are by some thought to be always ad-

verbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl. as, *Intus cellam*, for *intrà*, Liv. *Intus templo divum*, sc. *in*, Virg. *Simul his*, sc. *cum*, Hor.

Obs. 2. A and E are only put before consonants; AB and EX, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, e regione: ab initio, ab rege; ex urbe, ex parte: *abs* before *q* and *t*; as, abs te, abs quîvis homine, Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e*; as, e longinquo, e regione, e vestigio, e re mea est, &c. Some only with *ex*; as, Ex compacto, ex tempore, magna ex parte, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, Devenere locos, scil. ad; It portis, sc. ex, Virg. Nunc id prodeo, scil. ob v. propter, Ter. Maria aspera juro, scil. per, Virg. Ut se loco movere non possent, scil. e *vel* de, Cæs. Vina promens dolio, scil. ex, Hor. Quid illo facias? Quid me fiet, sc. de, Ter. And so in English, *Shew me the book; Get me some paper*, that is, *to me, for me.* We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, Circum Concordiæ, sc. ædem, Sall. *Round St. Paul's*, namely, *church*; Campum Stellatem divisit extra sortem ad viginti millibus civium, *i. e.* civium millibus ad viginti millia, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, Emittere servum, scil. manu, Plaut. Evomere virus, scil. ore, Cic. Educere copias, scil. castris, Cæs.

XLV. A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adeamus scholam,	*Let us go to the school.*
Exeamus scholâ,	*Let us go out of the school.*

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, Adire ad scholam; Exire e schola; Adgredi aliquid, *or* ad aliquid; ingredi orationem *vel* in orationem; inducere animum, et in animum; evadere undis et ex undis; decedere de suo jure; decedere viâ *vel* de via; expellere, ejicere, exterminare, extrudere, exturbare urbe, et ex urbe. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, Affari, alloqui, allatrare aliquem, *not* ad aliquem. So, alluere urbem; accolere flumen; circumvenire aliquem; præterire injuriam; abdicare se magistratu, (*also* abdicare magistratum;) transducere exercitum fluvium, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, Accurrere ad aliquem, adhortari ad aliquid, incidere in morbum, avocare a studiis, avertere ab incepto, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, Abire, demigrare, loco; et, a, de, ex, loco; abstrahere aliquem a, de, *vel* e conspectu; De-

ſiſtere ſententia, a *vel* de *ſententia*; *Excidere manibus*, de *vel* e *manibus*, &c.

Obſ. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accuſative; as,

Egredi urbe *or* urbem, ſcil. extra; egredi extra vallum, Nep. Evadere inſidiis *or* inſidias. Patrios excedere muros, Lucan. Scelerata excedere terrâ, Virg. Elabi ex manibus; pugnam, vincula, Tac.

Obſ. 3. This rule does not take place, unleſs when the prepoſition may be diſjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itſelf; as, Alloquor patrem, *or* loquor ad patrem.

3. The CONSTRUCTION of INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *proh*, are conſtrued with the nominative, accuſative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or *bone!* O good man! *Heu me miſerum!* Ah wretched me!

Se, O vir fortis atque amicus! *Ter.* Heu vanitas humana! *Plin.* Heu miſerande puer! *Virg.* O præclarum cuſtodem ovium *(ut aiunt)* lupum! *Cic.*

XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mihi! Ah me! *Væ vobis!* Wo to you!

Obſ. 1. *Heus* and *ehe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus ſenex!* Ter. *Ehe Lesbia!* Martial. *Proh* or *pro*, *ah*, *vah*, *heu*, have generally either the accuſative or vocative; as, Proh hominum fidem! Ter. Proh Sancte Jupiter! *Cic.* Hem aſtutias! *Ter.*

Obſ. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere ſounds excited by paſſion, and have no real connection with any other part of a ſentence. Whatever caſe therefore is joined with them, muſt depend on ſome other word underſtood, except the vocative, which is always placed abſolutely: thus, Heu me miſerum! *ſcilicet for* Heu! quam me miſerum ſentio! Hei mihi! *for* Hei! malum eſt mihi! Proh dolor! *for* Proh! quantus eſt dolor! and ſo in other examples.

The CONSTRUCTION of CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumſtances, which in Latin are expreſſed in different caſes, are, 1. The *Place of a thing*. 2. The *Cauſe*, *Manner*, and *Inſtrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Meaſure* and *Diſtance*. 5. *Time*.

1. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duobus assibus,	I bought a book for two shillings.
Constitit talento,	It cost a talent.

So Asse carum est; vile viginti minis; auro venale, *&c.* Nocet empta dolore voluptas, *Hor.* Spem pretio non emam, *Ter.* Plurimi auro veneunt honores, *Ovid.*

¶ These genitives *tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris,* are excepted; as,

Quanti constitit? How much cost it? *Asse et pluris,* A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere, *Cic.*

Obs. 2. Magno, permagno, parvo, paululo, minimo, plurimo, are often used without the substantive; as, Permagno constitit, sc. pretio, *Cic.* We also say, Emi carè, cariùs, carissimè; bene, meliùs, optimè; malè, pejùs, viliùs, vilissimè; Valde carè æstimas: Emit domum prope dimidio cariùs, quam æstimabat, *Cic.*

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret, *Liv.*

2. MANNER and CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Palleo metu,	I am pale for fear.
Fecit suo more,	He did it after his own way.
Scribo calamo,	I write with a pen.

So Ardet dolore; pallescere culpâ; æstuare dubitatione; gestire voluptate ex secundis rebus; Confectus morbo; affectus beneficiis, gravissimo supplicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentiâ: Pietate filius, consiliis pater, amore frater; *hence* Rex Dei gratiâ. Paritur pax bello, *Nep.* Procedere lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparatu: Nullo sono convertitur annus, *Juv.* Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede, *Ovid.* Percutere securi, defendere saxis, configere sagittis, &c.

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, De more matrum locuta est, *Virg.* Magno cum metu; Hac de causa: Præ mœrore, formidine, &c. But hardly ever before the instrument; as, Vulnerare aliquem gladio, *not* cum gladio; unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab*; as, Traiectus ab ense, *Ovid.*

Obſ. 2. When any thing is ſaid to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the prepoſition, *cum* uſually added; as, Obſedit curiam cum gladiis: Ingreſſus eſt cum gladio, *Cic.*

Obſ. 3. Under this rule are comprehended ſeveral other circumſtances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to expreſs the character or quality of the perſon or thing ſpoken of; as, Capitolium ſaxo quadrato conſtructum, *Liv.* Floruit acumine ingenii, *Cic.* Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoriâ, famâ nobilis, &c. Æger pedibus. When we expreſs the matter of which any thing is made, the prepoſition is uſually added; as, Templum de marmore, *ſeldom* marmoris; Poculum ex auro factum, *Cic.*

3. PLACE.

The circumſtances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by* or *through which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unleſs it be a noun of the third declenſion, or of the plural number, and then it is expreſſed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accuſative; FROM or BY a place, in the ablative.

But theſe caſes will be more exactly aſcertained by reducing the circumſtances of place to particular queſtions.

1. *The place* WHERE.

L. When the queſtion is made by *Ubi?* Where? the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

Vixit Romæ,	He lived at Rome.
Mortuus eſt Londini,	He died at London.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declenſion, or plural number, it is expreſſed in the ablative; as,

Habitat Carthagine,	He dwells at Carthage.
Studuit Pariſiis,	He ſtudied at Paris.

Obſ. 1. When a thing is ſaid to be done, not in the place itſelf, but in its neighbourhood, we always uſe the prepoſition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At or near Troy.

Obſ. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the prepoſition *in* underſtood; but if it be in the genitive, we muſt ſupply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the prepoſition is generally expreſſed: thus, we do not ſay, Natus eſt Romæ urbis celebris; but either Romæ in celebri urbe, *or* in Romæ celebri urbe, *or* in Roma celebri urbe, or ſometimes Romæ celebri urbe. In like manner we uſually ſay, Habitat in urbe Carthagine, with the prepoſition. We likewiſe find Habitat Carthagini, which is ſometimes the termination of the ablative, when the queſtion is made by *ubi?*

2. *The place* WHITHER.

LI. When the queſtion is made by *Quo?* Whither? the name of a town is put in the accuſative; as,

Venit Romam,	He came to Rome.
Profectus eſt Athenas,	He went to Athens.

Obſ. 1. We find the dative alſo uſed among the poets, but more ſeldom; as, Carthagini nuncios mittam, *Horat.*

Obſ. 2. Names of towns are ſometimes put in the accuſative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nunciatum,* The report was carried to Rome, *Liv.* Meſſanam literas dedit, *Cic.*

3. *The Place* WHENCE.

LII. When the queſtion is made by *Unde?* Whence? or *Qua?* By *or* through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

Diſceſſit Corintho,	He departed from Corinth.
Laodicêâ iter faciebat,	He went through Laodicea.

When motion *by* or *through* a place is ſignified, the prepoſition *per* is commonly uſed; as, Per Thebas iter fecit, *Nep.*

Domus and *Rus.*

LIII. *Domus* and *rus* are conſtrued the ſame way as names of towns; as,

Manet domi,	He ſtays at home.
Domum revertitur,	He returns home.
Domo arceſſitus ſum,	I am called from home.
Vivit rure, or more frequently *ruri,*	He lives in the country.
Rediit rure,	He is returned from the country.
Abiit rus,	He is gone to the country.

Obſ. 1. *Humi*, *militiæ*, and *belli*, are likewiſe conſtrued in the genitive, as names of towns; thus,

Domi et militiæ, or *belli*, At home and abroad. *Jacet humi*, He lies on the ground.

Obſ. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly uſe a prepoſition; as, In domo paterna, *not* domi paternæ; *So* Ad domum paternam: Ex domo paternâ. Unleſs when it is joined with theſe poſſeſſives, Meus, tuus, ſuus, noſter, regius, veſter, *and* alienus; as, Domi meæ vixit, *Cic.* Regiam domum comportant, *Sall.*

Obſ. 3. When *Domus* has another ſubſtantive in the genitive after it, the prepoſition is ſometimes uſed, and ſometimes not; as, Deprehenſus eſt domi, domo, *or* in domo Cæſaris.

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the prepoſition is commonly added; as,

	When the queſtion is made by	
Ubi?	Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe, &c.	
Quo?	Abiit in Italiam, in Latium, in, *or*, ad urbem, &c.	
Unde?	Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.	
Qua?	Tranſit per Italiam, per Latium, per urbem, &c.	

Obſ. 1. A prepoſition is often added to names of towns; as, In Roma *for* Romæ; ad Romam, ex Roma, &c.

Peto always governs the accuſative as an active verb, without a prepoſition; as, *Petivit Ægyptum*, He went to Egypt.

Obſ. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c. are ſometimes conſtrued without the prepoſition; as, Pompeius Cypri viſus eſt, *Cæſ.* Cretæ juſſit conſidere Apollo, *Virg.* Venit Sardiniam, *Cic.* Romæ, Numidiæque facinora ejus memorat, *Sall.*

4. MEASURE and DISTANCE.

LV. Meaſure or diſtance is put in the accuſative, and ſometimes in the ablative; as,

Murus eſt decem pedes altus,	*The wall is ten feet high.*
Urbs diſtat triginta millia, *or* triginta millibus paſſuum,	*The city is thirty miles diſtant.*
Iter, *or* itinere unius dici,	*One day's journey.*

Obſ. 1. The accuſative or ablative of meaſure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimenſion; as, *Longus*, *latus*, *craſſus*, *profundus* and *altus*: *Patet*, *porrigitur*, *eminet*, &c. The names of meaſure are *pes*, *cubitus*, *ulna*, *paſſus*, *digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a ſpan, an handbreadth, &c. The accuſative or ablative of diſtance is uſed only after verbs which expreſs motion or diſtance; as, *Eo*, *curro*, *abſum*

diſto, &c. The accuſative is governed by *ad* or *per* underſtood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obſ. 2. When we expreſs the meaſure of more things than one, we commonly uſe the diſtributive number; as, *Muri ſunt denos pedes alti*, and ſometimes *denûm pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad menſuram* being underſtood. But the genitive is only uſed to expreſs the meaſure of things in the plural number.

Obſ. 3. When we expreſs the diſtance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly uſe the ablative; or the accuſative with the prepoſition *ad*; as, Sex millibus paſſuum ab urbe conſedit, *or*, ad ſex millia paſſuum, *Cæſ.* Ad quintum milliarium *v.* milliare conſedit, *Cic.* Ad quintum lapidem, *Nep.*

Obſ. 4. The exceſs or difference of meaſure and diſtance is put in the ablative; as,

Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice ſupra eſt, *Virg.* Britanniæ longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliaribus ſuperat.

5. TIME.

LVI. When the queſtion is made by *Quando?* When? time is put in the ablative; as,

Venit horâ tertiâ,	He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the queſtion is made by *Quamdiu?* How long? time is put in the accuſative or ablative, but oftener in the accuſative; as,

Manſit paucos dies,	He ſtaid a few days.
Sex menſibus abfuit,	He was away ſix months.

* *Or thus*, Time *when* is put in the ablative, time *how long* is put in the accuſative.

Obſ. 1. When we ſpeak of any preciſe time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expreſſed, it is put for the moſt part in the accuſative.

Obſ. 2. All the circumſtances of time are often expreſſed with a prepoſition; as, In præſentia, *or* in præſenti, *ſcil.* tempore; in *vel* ad præſens; Per decem annos; Surgunt de nocte; Ad horam deſtinatam; Intra annum; Per idem tempus; ad Kalendas ſoluturos ait, *Suet.* The prepoſition *ad* or *circa* is ſometimes ſuppreſſed, as in theſe expreſſions, hoc, illud, id, iſtuc, ætatis, temporis, horæ, &c. *for* hac ætate, hoc tempore, &c. And *ante* or ſome other word; as, Annos natus unum & viginti, *ſc.* ante. Siculi quotannis tributa conferunt, *ſc.* tot annis, quot *vel* quotquot ſunt, *Cic.* Prope diem, *ſc.* ad, *ſoon*; Oppidum paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum eſt, expugnatum, *ſc.* poſt eos dies, *Cæſ.* Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accepi tuas literas, *for* die tertio ante, *Cic.* Qui dies futurus eſſet inante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris, *Id.* Exante diem quintum Kal. Octob. *Liv.*

Lacedæmonii ſeptingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt, *ſc.* quam per, *Cic.* We find, Primum ſtipendium meruit annorum decem ſeptemque, *ſc.* Atticus; *for* ſeptemdecim annos natus, *ſeventeen years old, Nep.*

Obſ. 3. The adverb *ABHINC* which is commonly uſed with reſpect to paſt time, is joined with the accuſative or ablative without a prepoſition, as, *factum eſt abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two years ago. So likewiſe are *poſt* and *ante*; as, *paucos poſt annos*: but here, *ea* or *id* may be underſtood.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound ſentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound ſentence is made up of two or more ſimple ſentences or *phraſes*, and is commonly called a *Period.*

The parts of which a compound ſentence conſiſts, are called *Members* or *Clauſes.*

In every compound ſentence there are either ſeveral ſubjects, and one attribute, or ſeveral attributes, and one ſubject, or both ſeveral ſubjects and ſeveral attributes: That is, there are either ſeveral nominatives applied to the ſame verb, or ſeveral verbs applied to the ſame nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgment or attribute, and every attribute muſt have a ſubject. There muſt therefore be in every ſentence or period as many propoſitions as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

Happy is the man who *loveth religion* and *practiſeth virtue.*

The CONSTRUCTION of RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative *Qui, Quæ, Quod,* agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and perſon; and is conſtrued through all the caſes, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Singular.		*Plural.*
Vir qui,	The man who.	*Viri qui.*
Fœmina quæ,	The woman who.	*Fœminæ quæ.*
Negotium quod,	The thing which.	*Negotia quæ.*
Ego qui ſcribo,	I who write.	*Nos qui ſcribimus.*
Tu qui ſcribis,	Thou who writeſt.	*Vos qui ſcribitis.*
Vir qui ſcribit,	The man who writes.	*Viri qui ſcribunt.*

Mulier quæ ſcribit,	The woman who writes.	*Mulieres quæ ſcribunt.*
Animal quod currit,	The animal which runs.	*Animalia quæ currunt.*
Vir quem vidi,	The man whom I ſaw.	*Viri quos vidi.*
Mulier quam vidi,	The woman whom I ſaw.	*Mulieres quas vidi.*
Animal quod vidi,	The animal which I ſaw.	*Animalia quæ vidi.*
Vir cui paret,	The man whom he obeys.	*Viri quibus paret.*
Vir cui eſt ſimilis,	The man to whom he is like.	*Viri quibus eſt ſimilis.*
Vir a quo,	The man by whom.	*Viri a quibus.*
Mulier ad quam,	The woman to whom.	*Mulieres ad quas.*
Vir cujus opus eſt,	The man whoſe work it is.	*Viri quorum opus eſt.*

Vir quem miſeror, cujus miſereor vel *miſereſco, cujus me miſeret, cujus* vel *cuja intereſt, &c.* } The man whom I pity. whoſe intereſt it is, &c.

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that caſe, which the verb or noun following, or the prepoſition going before, uſe to govern.

Thus the conſtruction of the relative requires an acquaintance with moſt of the foregoing rules of ſyntax, and may ſerve as an exerciſe on all of them.

Obſ. 1. The relative muſt always have an antecedent expreſſed or underſtood, and therefore may be conſidered as an adjective placed betwixt two caſes of the ſame ſubſtantive, of which the one is always expreſſed, generally the former; as,

Vir qui (vir) *legit*; *vir, quem* (virum) *amo*: Sometimes the latter; as, *Quam quiſque norit artem, in hac* (arte) *ſe exerceat*, Cic. *Eunuchum, quem dediſti nobis, quas turbas dedit*, Ter. ſc. *Eunuchus*. Sometimes both caſes are expreſſed; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire poſſent*, Cæſ. Sometimes, though more rarely, both caſes are omitted; as, *Sunt, quos hæc genus minime juvat*, for *ſunt homines, quos, &c.* Hor.

Obſ. 2. When the relative is placed betwixt two ſubſtantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though moſt commonly with the former; as,

Vultus quem dixere chaos, Ovid. *Eſt locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur*, Sall. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem*, Cic. *Cogito id quod res eſt*, Ter. If a part of a ſentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender; as, *Pompeius ſe afflixit, quod mihi eſt ſummo dolori*, ſcil. *Pompeium ſe affligere*, Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with ſome ſynonymous word ſupplied; as, *Scelus qui*, for *ſceleſtus*, Ter. *Abundantia earum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant*, ſcil. *negotia*, Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas*, quod *ego in aliqua parte amicitiæ puto, facit ut te moneam*, ſcil. *negotium*, Ter.

Obſ. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different perſons, it agrees with the firſt or ſecond perſon rather than the

third; as, *Ego ſum vir, qui facio,* ſcarcely *facit.* In Engliſh it ſometimes agrees with either; as, *I am the man, who make,* or *maketh.* But when once the perſon of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the reſt of the ſentence: thus it is proper to ſay "I am the man, who takes care of your intereſt," but if I add, "at the expence of my own," it would be improper. It ought either to be "his own," or "who take." In like manner, we ſay, "I thank you, who gave, who did love," &c. But it is improper to ſay, "I thank thee, who gave, who did love:" it ſhould be, "who gaveſt, who didſt love." In no part of Engliſh ſyntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into Engliſh. The reaſon of it ſeems to be our applying *thou* or *you, thy* or *your,* promiſcuouſly, to expreſs the ſecond perſon ſingular, whereas the Latins almoſt always expreſſed it by *tu* and *tuus.*

Obſ. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a poſſeſſive adjective; as,

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum, Ter. Sometimes the antecedent muſt be drawn from the ſenſe of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuiſſe ferunt;* i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem, &c.* Liv. *Si tempus eſt ullum jure hominis necandi, quæ multa ſunt,* ſcil. *tempora,* Cic.

Obſ. 5. The relative is ſometimes entirely omitted; as, Urbs antiqua fuit: Tyrii tenuere coloni, ſcil. quam *or* eam, *Virg.* Or if once expreſſed, is afterwards omitted, ſo that it muſt be ſupplied in a different caſe; as, Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadunt; *for* quique in priore pugna non adfuerant, *Sall.* In Engliſh the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it muſt be expreſſed; as, The letter I wrote, *for* the letter which I wrote; The man I love, *to wit,* whom. But this omiſſion of the relative is generally improper, particularly in ſerious diſcourſe.

Obſ. 6. The caſe of the relative ſometimes ſeems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum conſueſti, *for* quæ conſueſti agere, *or* quorum aliquid agere conſueſti, *Cic.* But ſuch examples rarely occur.

Obſ. 7. The adjective pronouns *ille, ipſe, iſte, hic, is,* and *idem,* in their conſtruction, reſemble that of the relative *qui*: as, *Liber ejus,* His *or* her book; *Vita eorum,* Their life, when applied to men; *Vita earum,* Their life, when applied to women. By the improper uſe of theſe pronouns in Engliſh, the meaning of ſentences is often rendered obſcure.

Obſ. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus, &c.* are alſo ſometimes conſtrued like relatives; as, Facies eſt, qualem decet eſſe ſororum, *Ovid.* But theſe have commonly other adjectives, either expreſſed or underſtood, which anſwer to them; as, Tanta eſt multitudo, quantam urbs capere poteſt: and are often applied to different ſubſtantives; as, Quales ſunt cives, talis eſt civitas, *Cic.*

Obſ. 9. The Latin relative often cannot be tranſlated literally into Engliſh, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as *Quod cum ita eſſet*, When that was ſo; not, Which when it was ſo, becauſe then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accuſative of the relative in Latin muſt be rendered by the nominative in Engliſh; as, *Quem dicunt me eſſe?* Who do they ſay that I am? *not* whom. *Quem dicunt advenare?* Who do they ſay is coming?

Obſ. 10. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is uſually conſtrued with the ſubjunctive mode, unleſs when the meaning of the verb is expreſſed poſitively; as, *Audire cupio, quæ legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read: *Audire cupio, quæ legiſti*, I want to hear, what you have read.

To the conſtruction of the Relative may be ſubjoined that of the ANSWER TO A QUESTION.

The anſwer is commonly put in the ſame caſe with the queſtion; as,

Qui vocare? Geta, *ſc.* vocor. Quid quæris? Librum, *ſc.* quæro. Quotâ horâ veniſti? Sextâ. *Sometimes the conſtruction is varied; as*, Cujus eſt liber? Meus, *not* mei: Quanti emptus eſt? Decem aſſibus. Damnatuſne es furti? Imo alio crimine. Often the anſwer is made by other parts of ſpeech than nouns; as, Quid agitur? Statur, *ſc.* a me, a nobis. Quis fecit? Neſcio: Aiunt Petrum feciſſe. Quomodo vales? Bene, male. Scripſiſtine? Scripſi, ita, etiam, immo, &c. An vidiſti? Non vidi, non, minime, &c. Chærea tuam veſtem detraxit tibi? Factum. Et eâ eſt indutus? Factum, *Ter.* Moſt of the rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of queſtions and anſwers.

The CONSTRUCTION of CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and ſome others, couple like caſes and modes; as,

Honora patrem et matrem, Honour father and mother.
Nec legit nec ſcribit, He neither reads nor writes.

Obſ. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and diſjunctive conjunctions; as likewiſe, *quam*, *niſi*, *præterquam*, *an*; and alſo adverbs of likeneſs, as, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quaſi*, *ut*, &c. as,

Nullum præmium a vobis poſtulo, præterquam hujus diei memoriam, *Cic.* Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra ſequitur, *Id.*

Obſ. 2. Theſe conjunctions properly connect the different members of a ſentence together, and are hardly ever applied to ſingle words, unleſs when ſome other word is underſtood. Hence if the conſtruction of the ſentence be varied, different caſes and modes may be coupled together; as,

Intereſt mea et reipublicæ; Conſtitit aſſe et pluris; Sive ea Romæ, ſive in Epiro; Decius cum devoveret, et in mediam aciem irruebat, *Cic.* Vir magni ingenii ſummâque induſtria; Neque per vim, neque inſidiis, *Sall.* Tecum habita, & nôris, quam ſit tibi curta ſupellex, *Perſ.*

Obſ. 3. When *et*, *aut*, *vel*, *ſive*, or *nec*, are joined to different members of the ſame ſentence, without connecting it particularly to any former ſentence, the firſt *et* is rendered in Engliſh by *both* or *likewiſe*; *aut* or *vel*, by *either*; the firſt *ſive*, by *whether*; and the firſt *nec*, by *neither*; as,

Et legit, et ſcribit; *ſo* tum legit, tum ſcribit; *or* cum legit, tum ſcribit, *He both reads and writes*; Sive legit, ſive ſcribit, *Whether he reads or writes*: Jacere quâ vera, quâ falſa; Increpare quâ conſules ipſos, quâ exercitum, *to upbraid both the conſuls and the army*, *Liv.*

LIX. Two or more ſubſtantives ſingular coupled by a conjunction, (as *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *&c.*) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui ſunt docti, Peter and John who are learned.

Obſ. 1. If the ſubſtantives be of different perſons, the verb plural muſt agree with the firſt perſon rather than the ſecond, and with the ſecond rather than the third; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, Cic. In Engliſh the perſon ſpeaking uſually puts himſelf laſt: thus, You and I read; Cicero and I are well: but in Latin the perſon who ſpeaks is generally put firſt: thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

Obſ. 2. If the ſubſtantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural muſt agree with the maſculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, Pater et mater, qui ſunt mortui: but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The perſon is ſometimes implied; as, Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c. Propter ſummam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c. *Cic.* Where *Athenæ* & *urbs* are put for *the learned men* of Athens. So in ſubſtantives; as, Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque reges legati miſſi, *i. e.* the king and queen, Liv.

Obſ. 3. If the ſubſtantives ſignify things without life, the adjective or relative plural muſt be put in the neuter gender; as, Divitiæ, decus, gloria, in oculis ſita ſunt, Sall.

The ſame holds, if any of the ſubſtantives ſignify a thing without life; becauſe when we apply a quality or join an adjective to ſeveral ſubſtantives of different genders, we muſt reduce the ſubſtantives to ſome certain claſs, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or claſs which comprehends under it both perſons and things, is that of ſubſtances or beings in general, which are neither maſculine nor feminine. To expreſs this the Latin grammarians uſe the word *Negotia*,

Obſ. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the neareſt ſubſtantive or nominative, and is underſtood to the reſt; as,

Et ego et Cicero meus flagitabit, *Cic.* Sociis et rege recepto, *Virg.* Et ego in culpa ſum, et tu, *Both I am in the fault, and you*; *or* Et ego et tu es in culpa, *Both I and you are in the fault.* Nihil hic niſi carmina defunt; *or* nihil hic deeſt niſi carmina. Omnia, quibus turbari ſolita erat civitas, domi diſcordia, foris bellum exortum; Duo millia et quadringenti cæſi, *Liv.* This conſtruction is moſt uſual, when the different ſubſtantives reſemble one another in ſenſe; as, Mens, ratio, et conſilium in ſenibus eſt, *Underſtanding, reaſon, and prudence is in old men.*

Obſ. 5. The plural is ſometimes uſed after the prepoſition *cum* put for *et*; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, *Virg.* The conjunction is frequently underſtood; as, Dum ætas, metus, magiſter prohibebant, *Ter.* Frons, oculi, vultus ſæpe mentiuntur, *Cic.*

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepſis.*

LX. The conjunctions *ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam,* and *dum-modo,* are for the moſt part joined to the ſubjunctive mode; as,

Lego ut diſcam, I read that I may learn.
Utinam ſaperes, I wiſh you were wiſe.

Obſ. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the ſubjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as, Quantus, qualis, quótus, quotuplex, uter; Pronouns as, quis, & cujas; Adverbs, as, Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorſum, quamdiu, quamdudum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, quî, ut, quam, quantopĕre: or Conjunctions, as, ne, an, anne, annon: Thus, *Quis eſt?* Who is it? *Neſcio quis ſit;* I do not know who it is. An venturus eſt? Neſcio, dubito, an venturus ſit. Viden' ut alta ſtet nive candidum Soracte, *Hor.* But theſe words are ſometimes joined with the indicative; as Scio quid ago, *Plaut.* Haud ſcio an amat, *Ter.* Vide avaritia quid facit, *Id.* Vides quam turpe eſt, *Cic.*

¶ In like manner the Relative QUI in a continued diſcourſe; as, Nihil eſt quod Deus efficere non poſſit. Quis eſt, qui utilia fugiat? *Cic.* Or when joined with QUIPPE or UTPOTE; Neque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui ſequeretur, *&c. Sall.* But theſe are ſometimes, although more rarely, joined with the Indicative. *So* Eſt qui, ſunt qui, eſt quando v. ubi, &c. are joined with the indicative or ſubjunctive.

NOTE, Haud ſcio an recte dixerim, *is the ſame with* dico, affirmo, *Cic.*

Obs. 5. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; as,

Est decem digitis altior quam frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, *or* by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre*, i. e. *duplo major*, He is as big again as his brother, *or* twice as big. *Sesquipede minor*, a foot and a half less; *Altero tanto, aut sesquimajor*, As big again, *or* a half bigger, *Cic.* Ter tanto pejor est; Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quam prius, *Plaut.* *Quinquies tanto amplius, quam quantum licitum sit, civitatibus imperavit*, five times more, *Cic.* To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio, &c.* thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt*, The more they have, the more they desire. *Quanto melior, tanto felicior*, The better, the happier. We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives: Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus, *Sall.* Multoque id maximum fuit, *Liv.*

The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive and a Participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebræ, { The sun rising, *or* while the sun riseth, darkness flies away.

Opere peracto, ludemus, { Our work being finished, *or* when our work is finished, we will play.

So, Dominante libidine, temperantiæ nullus est locus; Nihil amicitiâ præstabilius est, exceptâ virtute; Oppressâ libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speremus amplius; Nobilium vitâ victuque mutato, mores mutari civitatum puto, *Cic.* Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscis, nisi cogerentur, pugnam inituris, et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante, ut ab auguribus, simul aves rite admissent, ex composito tolleretur signum, *Liv.*

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place: the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of; as, *Milites, hostibus victis, redierunt*, The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus victis*, may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. The enemy conquered, *or* being conquered; 2. When *or* after the enemy is *or* was conquered; 3. By conquering the enemy; 4. Upon the defeat of the enemy, &c.

Obſ. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not uſed in the ablative abſolute; as, *Cicero locutus hæc conſedit*, never *his locutis*. The participles of common verbs may either agree in caſe with the ſubſtantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative abſolute, like the participles of paſſive verbs; as, Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt; *or* Romani, libertate adepta, floruerunt. But as the participles of common verbs are ſeldom taken in a paſſive ſenſe, we therefore find them rarely uſed in the ablative abſolute.

Obſ. 3. The participle *exiſtente* or *exiſtentibus* is frequently underſtood; as, Cæſare duce, *ſcil.* exiſtente. His conſulibus, *ſcil.* exiſtentibus. Invitâ Minervâ, *ſc.* exiſtente, *againſt the grain*; Craſſa Minervâ, *without learning*, *Hor.* Magiſtrâ ac duce naturâ; vivis fratribus; te hortatore; Cæſare impulſore, &c. Sometimes the ſubſtantive muſt be ſupplied; as, Nondum comperto, quam regionem hoſtes petiſſent, *i. e.* cum nondum compertum eſſet, *Liv.* Excepto quod non ſimul eſſes, cætera lætus, *Hor.* In ſuch examples *negotio* muſt be underſtood, or the reſt of the ſentence conſidered as the ſubſtantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb ſupply the place of a ſubſtantive; as, *Vale dicto*, having ſaid farewell, *Ovid.*

Obſ. 4. We ſometimes find a Subſtantive plural joined with a participle ſingular; as, *Nobis præſente*, Plaut. *Abſente nobis*, Ter. We alſo find the ablative abſolute, when it refers to the ſame perſon with the nominative to the verb; as, *Me duce ad hunc voti finem, me milite veni*, Ovid. But examples of this conſtruction very rarely occur.

Obſ. 5. The ablative called abſolute is governed by ſome preposition underſtood; as, *a*, *ab*, *cum*, *ſub*, or *in*. We find the preposition ſometimes expreſſed; as, Cum diis juvantibus, *Liv.* The nominative likewiſe ſeems ſometimes to be uſed abſolutely; as, Perniciosa libidine pauliſper uſus, infirmitas naturæ accuſatur, *Sall. Jug* 1.

Obſ. 6. The ablative abſolute may be rendered ſeveral different ways: thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the ſame with *Cum*, *dum*, or *quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opere peracto*, is the ſame with *Poſt opus peractum*, or *Cum opus eſt peractum*. The preſent participle, when uſed in the ablative abſolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obſ. 7. When a ſubſtantive is joined with a participle in Engliſh independently on the reſt of the ſentence, it is expreſſed in the nominative; as, *Illo deſcendente*, He deſcending. But this manner of ſpeech is ſeldom uſed except in poetry.

be directed by me, Id. aures, *to liſten*; oblivioni, *to forget*; civitatem ei, *to make one free of the city*; dicta, *to ſpeak*; verba alicui, *to impoſe on, to cheat*; ſe in viam, *to enter on a journey*; viam ei, *to give place*; jus gratiæ, *to adminiſter juſtice to intereſt*: ſe turpiter, *to make a ſhabby appearance*; fundum, *vel* domum alicui mancipio, *to convey the property of, to warrant the title to*; Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus uſu, Lucr. ſervos in quæſtionem, *to give up ſlaves to be tortured*; primas, ſecundas, &c (ſc. partes) actioni, *to aſcribe every thing to delivery*, Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. somas diffundere ventis, *to let them flow looſe*, Virg. Da mihi *v.* nobis, *tell us*, Cic. Ut res dant ſe, *as matters go*; ſolertem dabo, *I'll warrant him expert*, Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum ſolvi, *to give ſecurity that what the judge has determined ſhall be paid*, Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, *v.* pro aliquo, *to ſide with, to be of the ſame party*; judicio ejus, *to follow*; in ſententia; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, *to ſtand to, to make good an agreement*; re judicatâ, *to keep to what has been determined*; ſtare *v.* conſtare animo, *to be in his ſenſes*: Non ſtat per me quo minus pecunia ſolvatur, *It is not owing to me that, &c.* multorum ſanguine ea Pœnis victoria ſtetit, *coſt*, Liv. Mihi ſtat alere morbum deſinere, *I am reſolved*, Nep.

ADSTARE menſæ, *to ſtand by*; ad menſam, in conſpectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, *to conſiſt of*; ſecum, *to be conſiſtent with*, Cic. liber conſtitit *v.* ſtetit mihi duobus aſſibus, *coſt me*; non conſtat ei color, *his colour comes and goes*; auri ratio conſtat, *the ſum is right*. Conſtat, imperſ. *It is evident, certain or agreed on*; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

EXTARE aquis, *to be above*, Ovid. ad memoriam poſteritatis, *to remain*, Cic.

INSTARE victis, *to preſs on the vanquiſhed*; rectam viam, *to be in the right way*; currum Marti, *to make ſpeedily*, Virg. inſtat factum, *inſiſts that it was done*, Ter.

OBSTARE ei, *to hinder*.

PRÆSTARE multa, *to perform*; alicui, *v.* aliquem virtute, *to excel*; ſilentium ei, *to give*; auxilium, *to grant*, Juv. impenſas, *to defray*; iter tutum, *to procure*; ſe incolumem, *to preſerve*; ſe virum, *i. e.* præbere, exhibere; amorem, *v.* benevolentiam alicui, *to ſhew*; culpam *v.* damnum, *i. e.* in ſe transferre, *to take on one's ſelf*; præſtabo de me; eum facturum, *I will be anſwerable*. In iis rebus repetendis quæ mancipi ſunt, is periculum judicii præſtare debet, qui ſe nexu obligavit, *In recovering*, or *in an action to recover, thoſe things, which are tranſferable, the ſeller ought to take upon himſelf the hazard of a trial*, Cic. *N. B.* Thoſe things were called, Res mancipi, *(contracted for* mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) *the property of which might be tranſferred from one Roman citizen to another, as, houſes, lands, ſlaves, &c.*

Præſtat, imperſ. i. e. *it is better*: Præſto eſſe alicui, adv. *to be preſent, to aſſiſt*; Libri præſtant venales, *the books are expoſed to ſale*.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, *to recline near*; apud aliquem. Incubare ovis & ova, *to ſit upon*; ſtratis & ſuper ſtrata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

HABERE ſpem, febrim, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, conſuetudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, *v.* inter manus, *to have*; gratiam & gratum, *to have a grateful ſenſe of a favour*; judicium, *to hold a trial*; honorem ei, *to honor*; in oculis, *to be fond of*, Ter.: fidem alicui, *to truſt or believe*; curam de, *v.* pro eo; rationem alicujus, *to pay regard to, to allow one to ſtand candidate for an office*; rationem *v.* rem cum aliquo, *to have buſineſs with*; ſatis, *to be ſatisfied*; orationem, concionem ad populum, *to make a ſpeech*; aliquem odio, in odium, *to hate*; ludibrio, *to mock*; id religioni, *to have a ſcruple about it: So*, habere aliquid quæſtui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. ſe. ſibi; ſe bene *v.* graviter, *to be well or ill*; ſe parce & duriter, *to live*, Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perſpectum, exploratum, certum *v.* pro certo, *to know for certain*; aliquem contemptui, deſpicatui, -um, *v.* in deſpicatum, *to deſpiſe*; excuſatum, *to excuſe*; ſuſque deque, *to ſcorn, to ſlight*; Ut res ſe habet, *ſtands, is*; rebus ita ſe habentibus, *in this ſtate of affairs*; Hæc habeo, *v.* habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo neceſſe ſcribere, quid ſim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, *a form of divorce.*

ADHIBERE diligentiam; celeritatem, vim, ſeveritatem in aliquem, *to uſe*; in convivium *v.* conſilium, *to admit*; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, *to apply*; vinum ægrotis, *to give*; aures verſibus, *to bear with taſte*; cultum & preces diis, *to offer*, Cic. Exhibere moleſtiam alicui, *to cauſe trouble.*

JUBERE legem, *to vote for, to paſs*; aliquem ſalvere, *to wiſh one health*; eſſe bono animo, &c. Uxorem ſuas res ſibi habere juſſit, *divorced*, Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re. Doctus, *adj.* utriuſque linguæ; Latinis & Græcis literis; Latine & Græce; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aquâ, Plin. cuncta ſanguine, Tacit. ſacra profanis, Hor.

VIDERE rem *v.* de re; ſibi, de iſthoc, *to take care of*, Ter. plus, *to be more wiſe*, Cic. De hac tu videris, *conſider, be anſwerable for*, Cic. Videor videre, *methinks I ſee*; viſus ſum audire, *methought I heard*; mihi viſus eſt dicere, *he ſeemed*; Quid tibi videtur? *What think you?* Si tibi videtur, *if you pleaſe*; videtur feciſſe, &c.

INVIDERE honorem ei, *v.* honori ejus; ei *vel* cum, *to envy.*

PROVIDERE & proſpicere id, *to foreſee*; ei, *to provide for*; in poſterum; rei frumentariæ, rem *v.* de re.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, *to ride*; toga bene ſedet, *fits*; Sedet hoc animo, *is fixed*, Virg.

verſus, &c. *to write a play*, &c. copiam conſilii ei, *to offer advice*; fidem, *to procure* or *give credit*; periculum, *to make trial*; poteſtatem ſui, *to expoſe himſelf*, Nep. aliquem loquentem v. loqui, *to ſuppoſe or repreſent*, Cic. piraticam, *ſc.* rem, *to be a pirate*; argentariam, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. *to be an uſurer, a phyſician*, &c. verſuram, *to contract a new debt, to diſcharge an old one, to borrow money at great intereſt*, Cic. cum v. ab aliquo, *to ſide with*; contra v. adverſus, *to oppoſe*; nomen v. nomina, *to borrow money*, and alſo *to ſettle accounts*, i. e. rationes acceptarum *ſc.* pecuniarum et expenſarum inter ſe conferre; nomen in litura, *to write it where ſomething was before*, Cic. pedem, *to ſail with a ſide wind*, Virg. Fac ita eſſe, *ſuppoſe it is ſo*; obvius fieri alicui, *to meet*; ne longum, v. longa faciam, *not to be tedious*; equus non facit, *will not move*, Cic.

Afficere aliquem laude, honore, præmio, et ignominiâ, pœnâ, morte, leto, &c. *to praiſe, honor*, &c. *to diſgrace, puniſh*, &c. Affectus ætate, morbo, *weakened*.

Conficere bellum, *to finiſh*; orationes, *to compoſe*, Nep. cibum, *to chew*; argentum, *to raiſe, to get*; *alſo to ſpend*, Cic. cum aliquo de re, *to conclude a bargain*; exercitus hoſtium, *to deſtroy*, Liv. Qui ſtipendiis confectis erant, i. e. emeriti, *bad ſerved out their time*, Cic.

Deficere animo, *to faint*; ab aliquo, *to revolt*; tempus deficit mihi v. me, *fails*: Defici viribus, ratione, &c. *to be deprived of*.

Inficere ſe vitio, *to ſtain*; infectus, part. *ſtained*; infectus, adj. *not done*. Inficior, -atus, -ari, *to deny*.

Officere alicui, *to hinder* or *hurt*; Diogeni apricanti, *to ſtand betwixt him and the ſun*; auribus, viſui, *to ſtop* or *obſtruct*; Umbra terræ ſoli officiens noctem efficit, *Cic.*

Præficere aliquem exercitui, *to ſet over*. Proficere alicui, *to profit, to do good*; in philoſophia, et progreſſus facere, *to make progreſs*.

Reficere muros, rates, res, *to repair*; animum, vires, ſaucios, ſe, jumenta, *to refreſh, to recover*.

Sufficere laboribus, ictibus, *to be able to bear*; arma v. vires alicui, *to afford*; Valerius in locum Collatini ſuffectus eſt, *was ſubſtituted*, Liv. Filius patri ſuffectus, *Tacit.* Oculos ſuffecti ſanguine et igne, ſc. ſecundum, *having their eyes red and inflamed*, Virg.

Satisfacere alicui, in v. de aliqua re, *to ſatisfy*; fidei, promiſſo, *to perform*.

Jacere aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, *to throw*; fundamenta, et ponere, *to lay*; talos, *to play at dice*; anchoram, *to caſt*.

Adjicere *to add*; oculos alicui rei, *to covet*; animum ſtudiis, *to apply*.

Conjicere ſe in pedes, v. fugam, *to fly*; cætera, *to conjecture*.

Injicere manus ei, *to lay on*; ſpem, ardorem, ſuſpicionem, pavorem, alicui, *to inſpire*; admirationem ſui cuivis ipſo aſpectu, *Nep.*

OBJICERE ſe hoſtibus, in *v.* ad omnes caſus, *to oppoſe*, or *expoſe*; crimen ei, *to lay to one's charge.*

REJICERE tela in hoſtes, *to throw back*; judices, mala, *to reject*; rem ad ſenatum, Romam, *to refer*; rem ad Idus Febr. *to delay*, Cic.

SUBJICERE ova gallinæ, to ſet an hen; ſe imperio alicujus, to ſubmit; teſtamenta, to forge; teſtes, to ſuborn; partes *vel* ſpecies generibus, ex quibus emanant, to put or claſs under; aliquid ei, to ſuggeſt; libellum ei, i. e. in manus dare; odio civium, to expoſe; bona Pomperii *vel* fortunas haſtæ, *vel* voci et ſub voce præconis, to expoſe to public ſale, *Cic.* ſub haſta venire, to be ſold, *Liv.*

TRAJICERE copias *vel* exercitum, fluvium, Helleſpontum, *vel* trans fluvium, to tranſport; Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus eſt, paſſed or ſailed over. Trajectus ferro, pierced.

CAPERE conjecturam, conſilium, dolorem, fugam, ſpecimen, ſpem, ſedem, &c. to gueſs, conſult, grieve, fly, eſſay, hope, fit, &c. augurium, *vel* auſpicium, et agere, to take an omen; exemplum de aliquo; locum caſtris; terram, to alight; inſulam, ſumma, *ſc.* loca, to reach; ſpolia ex nobilitate, to gain, *Sall.* de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magiſtratum, to receive or enjoy; virginem veſtalem, to chuſe; amentiam, ſpiritus, ſuperbiam alicujus, to bear, to contain; aliquem conſilio, perfidiâ, to catch; nec te Troja capit, Virg. Ædes vix nos capiunt, the houſe hardly contains us: Altero oculo capitur, blind of one eye; capitur locis, he is delighted with, Virg.

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, to receive; Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, two copies of the ſame letter, Cic. clamorem, de Socrate, to hear; id in bonam partem, to take in good part, to underſtand in a good ſenſe; omnia ad contumeliam, aliter, aliorſum ac, atque, Ter. rudem, *vel* rude donari, to be diſcharged as a gladiator; aliquem bene *vel* male, to treat; eum male acceptum in Mediam hiematum coegit redire, roughly handled, Nep. rogationem, to approve the bill; nomen, i. e. ad petendum admittere, to allow to ſtand candidate; omen, to eſteem good; ſatisfactionem *v.* excuſationem, Cæſar. Acceptus plebi, apud plebem, popular.

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, to preſcribe the form of an oath; conceptis verbis jurare: inimicitias cum aliquo, to bear enmity to one; aquam, to gather, to form the head of an aquæduct, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE cum hoſpitio, to entertain; fugientes, to catch; extremum ſpiritum cognatorum; ſanguinem paterâ, to keep or gather; notis, et ſcribere, to write in ſhort hand; motus futuros, to

perceive; Hos homines excipio, I except; virtutem excipit immortalitas; turbulentior annus excepit, ſucceeded; ſic excepit regia Juno, replied, Virg.

INCIPERE, occipere, to begin. Percipere fructus, to reap.

PRÆCIPERE futura, to foreſee; gaudia, ſpem victoriæ, to anticipate; pecuniam mutuam, to take before the time, Cæſar; lac, to dry up, Virg. alicui id, *vel* de ea re, to order; artem ei, to teach.

RECIPERE aliquid, to receive; urbem, to recover; eum tectis, to entertain; ſe v. pedem, to retreat; ſe domum, to return; ſe, mentem, animum, to come to one's ſelf again, to recover ſpirits; in ſe, to take charge; alicui, to promiſe; ſe ad frugem, to amend; ſenem ſeſſum, to give a ſeat to, Cic.

RAPERE *vel* trahere in pejorem partem, to take a thing in the worſt ſenſe; in jus, to bring before a judge; partes inter ſe, to ſhare, Liv.

EXUERE veſtes ſibi, ſe veſtibus; jugum ſibi, ſe jugo, to caſt off; fidem, ſacramentum, to break; mentem, to change, Virg. hoſtem caſtris, to beat from.

RUERE ad interitum, in ferrum; cæteros, Ter. ſpumas, to drive or toſs, Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitis, to ſuffer; æs alienum, to pay, Curt. culpam ſuam *vel* alterius, morte, ſanguine, to expiate, to atone or ſuffer for.

ELABI amicitias remiſſione uſûs, to drop gradually, Cic.

STATUERE exemplum in hominem, v. -ne, to make one a public example; aliquem capite in terram, Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, to ſettle; agmen pauliſper, to make to ſtop or halt, Sall. in digitis, to count on one's fingers, Cic. urbem, to build, Ovid. Is hodie venturum ad me conſtituit domum, appointed, reſolved, Ter. Si utilitas amicitiam conſtituit tollet eadem, makes, conſtitutes, Cic. Corpus bene conſtitutum, a good conſtitution, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, to forſake; ſpem, to deceive; propoſitum, to give over, Ovid. deos pactâ mercede, to defraud, Hor.

INSTITUERE aliquem ſecundum hæredem filio, to appoint, Cic. collegium fabrorum, to inſtitute, to found, Plin. aliquem doctrinâ, Græcis literis, to inſtruct; naves, to build, Cæſ. ſermonem, to enter upon, Id. animum ad cogitandum, to ſettle; antequam pro Murænа dicere inſtituo, I begin, Cic.

PRÆSTITUERE petitori, qua actione illum uti oporteat, to preſcribe to the proſecutor what form of proceſs he ſhould uſe, Cic. tempus ei, to determine.

RESTITUERE exules; virginem ſuis, to reſtore; oppida vicoſque, to repair; aciem inclinatam, to rally; prælium, to renew, Liv.

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, to ſubſtitute or put in the place of, Cic.

STRUERE epulas, to prepare; inſidias, mendacium, to contrive; odium, crimen alicui, *v.* in aliquem, to raiſe againſt.

SCRIBERE ſua manu, bene, velociter, epiſtolam alicui, *vel* ad aliquem; bellum, *vel* de bello; milites, to enliſt; ſupplementum militibus, to recruit them; hæredem, to make one his heir; dicant ei, to raiſe an action againſt one; nummos, to give a bill of exchange; de rebus ſuis ſcribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus ſcribendis, Liv.

ASCRIBERE aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v.* -e, to make free.

DESCRIBERE aliquem, to deſcribe and not to name; partes Italiæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, to diſtribute, to divide; vectigal civitatibus, i. e. imperare; jura, i. e. dare *v.* conſtituere; cenſores binos in ſingulas civitates, i. e. facere, Cic.

INSCRIBERE literas alicui, to direct a letter; librum, to entitle or name; ædes mercede, to put a ticket on one's houſe to let, Ter.

PROSCRIBERE bona alicujus, ædes ſuas, auctionem, to publiſh to be ſold, to ſet to ſale; aliquem, to baniſh, to outlaw.

RESCRIBERE alicujus literis *v.* ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, to write an anſwer; pecuniam, to pay money by bill; legionem ad equum, to ſet foot ſoldiers on horſeback, Cæſ.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum literarum, to write below; cauſæ, to join or take part in an accuſation; Cæſaris iræ, to favour, Ovid.

DICERE aliquid, *vel* de aliqua re, ex aliquo loco, alicui, ad *vel* apud aliquem; in aliquem, againſt; ad aliquid, in anſwer to; ſententiam, to give an opinion; jus, to adminiſter juſtice, to pronounce ſentence; mulctam ei, to amerce or fine; diem ei, to appoint a day for his trial before the people; prodicere, to put it off; cauſam, to plead; teſtimonium, to give evidence; non idem *loqui* eſt ac dicere, to harangue, Cic. ſacramento, *feldom* -um, to take the military oath.

ADDICERE aliquid ei, to call out at an auction, to ſell; ſervitutí, *v.* in ſervitutem, to ſentence or adjudge to bondage; bona, to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor; ſe alicui, to devote himſelf to one's ſervice; aves non addixerunt, *v.* abdixerunt, the birds did not give a favorable omen; pretio addictam habere fidem, to be corrupt, Cic.

CONDIÇERE operam alicui, to promiſe aſſiſtance; cœnam alicui, *vel* ad cœnam, to propoſe ſupping with one without invitation.

EDICERE alicui, to order; delectum, to appoint a levy; prædam militibus, to promiſe by an edict; juſtitium, diem comitiis, *v.* comitia conſulibus creandis, to appoint.

INDICERE bellum, juſtitium, to proclaim war; legem ſibi, to appoint, Cic. cœtus in domos tribunorum, to ſummon, Liv. indicare, to ſhew; indictus, an adj. not ſaid; causâ indictâ, *v.* non cognitâ condemnari, to be condemned without being heard; me indicente, hæc non fiunt, not telling, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui aliquid, v. aliqua re, fœminis uſum purpuræ, to forbid or debar from; ei aqua & igne, v. aquam et ignem, to baniſh; male rem gerentibus bonis paternis interdici ſolet, Cic. interdici non poterat ſoecro gener, diſcharged the company of, Nep.

PRÆDICERE alicui aliquid, de aliqua re, id in hac re, to foretell, to forewarn.

DUCERE in carcerem, to lead; exercitum, to command; ſpiritum, animam, vitam, to breathe, to live; foſſam, murum, to make or draw; bellum, to prolong, *alſo* to carry on, Virg. ætatem, *diem*, to ſpend; uxorem, to take a wife; in jus, to ſummon before a judge; aliquem, et vultum alicujus, ære, ex ære, de auro, marmore, &c. to make a ſtatue; genus, nomen ab *vel* ex aliquo, to derive; omnia pro nihilo, infra ſe; id ei laudi, laudem, *vel* in laudem, oftener the firſt, to reckon on it a praiſe to him; in conſcientiam, to impute to a conſciouſneſs of guilt; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centeſimas, ſc. uſuras, *vel* fœnus centeſimis, to compute intereſt at one for the hundred a month; or at 12 per cent per annum; binis centeſimis fœnerari, to take 24 per cent per annum, Cic. ducere longas voces in fletum, to draw out, Virg ordines, to be a centurion, Liv. ilia, to pant like a broken winded horſe, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, to bring to a trial; in ſuſpicionem regi, Nep. arcum, to draw in; habenas, to ſtraiten the reins.

CONDUCERE aliquem ex loco, to convey; navem, domum, coquos, to hire; columnam faciendam, to engage to make at a certain price: Conducit hoc tuæ laudi, in *vel* ad rem, is of advantage.

DEDUCERE naves, to launch; claſſem in prælium, to bring, Nep. equites, to make to alight, Liv. eum domum, to accompany, to carry home; de ſententia, Cic. coloniam, to tranſplant; lacum, to drain.

EDUCERE gladium e vagina, to draw; florem Italiæ, to lead out, Cic. filium, to educate, oftener educare; in aſtra, to extol, Hor.

INDUCERE tenebras clariſſimis rebus, to bring on, Cic. animum, v. in animum, to perſuade himſelf; ſcuta pellibus, to cover, Cæſar. ſoleas pedibus, v. in pedes, to put on; colorem picturæ, to varniſh, Plin. nomina, to cancel or raſe, to rub ont.

OBDUCERE exercitum, to lead againſt; callum dolori, to blunt it; ſepulchrum ſentibus, to cover.

REDUCERE aliquem in memoriam alicujus, v. alicui aliquid in memoriam, to bring back to one's remembrance; in gratiam cum aliquo, to reconcile; Vallis reducta, retired or low.

PRODUCERE teſtes, to bring out; funus, to attend; ſermonem in noctem, to prolong, to continue; rem in hiemem, to defer, ſervos vendendos, to bring to market.

SUBDUCERE ſe a cuſtodibus, to ſteal away; naves, to draw up on ſhore; cibum ei et deducere, to take from; ſummam, rationes, to reckon, to caſt up accounts.

PARCERE ſibi, labori, to ſpare, &c. a cædibus, to forbear; aurum natis, Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, *vel* re aliqua, in *vel* ad hoc, to be accuſtomed; mentem pluribus et affuefacere, Hor. Animis bella, Virg. to accuſtom. *So* inſuefco rei *vel* re; inſuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

SCISCERE legem, to vote, to decree; *hence* plebiſcitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, to aſſume; ſocios ſibi, ad ſocietatem ſceleris, to aſſociate; ritus peregrinos, to adopt.

CONSCISCERE mortem *v.* necem ſibi, to kill one's ſelf; fugam ſibi, to flee, Liv.

DISCERE aliquid ab aliquo, *v.* apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, *or without* ex: Dediſcere, to forget what he hath learned; Ediſcere, to get by heart.

DESCENDERE de palatio, præſidio, ædibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accuſandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, to have recourſe to, Cic.

LUDERE aleâ, *v.* -am, to play at dice; par impar, at even and odd; operam, to loſe one's labour.

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem: Colludere ei, cum eo; Illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, to mock.

EVADERE inſidias, -is, *v.* ex, to eſcape; in muros, to mount: Hæc quorſum evadant, neſcio, to what they will turn out: Clarus evaſit, became.

CEDERE multa multis de ſuo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, to yield, *whence* ceſſio bonorum; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, *vel* locum, to give place; vitâ, e vita decedere, to die; foro, to turn bankrupt; Hæreditas cedit mihi, falls to; Cedit in proverbium, becomes.

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad *v.* in oppidum, to approach; ad conditiones, to agree to; Ciceroni, ſententiæ, *vel* ad ſententiam ejus, to agree with; ad Ciceronem, to go to; ad rempublicam, to bear the queſtorſhip, or the firſt public office; ad amicitiam Philippi, to gain the friendſhip of, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, Ter. Robur acceſſit ætati, Cic. Animi acceſſere hoſti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona acceſſerant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc accedit, quod, is added.

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely* alicui, to excel.

CONCEDERE ei aliquid et de aliquo; paullum de ſuo jure; tempus ad rem, to grant; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, to retire, to go; fato, naturæ, vitâ, to die; in ſententiam ejus, to come into one's meaſures; in conditiones, to agree to, Liv.

DISCEDERE tranſverſum, et latum unguem, v. digitum a re, to depart in the leaſt.

INTERCEDERE legi, to give a negative againſt, to oppoſe a law; pecuniam pro aliquo, to become ſurety; Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia v. inter nos, there is, &c.

SUCCEDERE ei in locum ejus, to ſucceed; muro, v. murum; ad urbem; ſub primam aciem; in pugnam, to come up to.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, to fall; causâ, formulâ, in judicio, et litem perdere, to loſe one's cauſe, to be caſt; in *vel* ſub ſenſum, oculos, poteſtatem, &c. in morbum, et incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, is incapable of, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quaſi puero, gaudio, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, v. ad genua, to fall at; auribus v. ad aures, to come to; alicui, caſu, præter opinionem, to happen; accidit in ſeriſtud verbum, applies, Ter.

TENDERE vela, to ſtretch; inſidias, retia, plagas, &c. to lay ſnares; arcum, to bend; iter, curſum, to direct; ad altiora, in cœlum, to aim at; extra vallum, ſc. tabernaculum, to pitch a tent; Manibus tendit divellere nodos, tries, Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem, to take heed; animum ad rem; res hoſtium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, to exert one's ſelf; aliquid ab aliquo, to aſk earneſtly: inter ſe; amori, poet. *for* cum amore, to ſtrive; cauſas, ſe. inter ſe, to compare, Cic. Aliquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, et alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, to underſtand; rem pluribus et luculentioribus verbis, to expreſs; aliquem humanitate, amicitia, to gain; rem fictam, to diſcover.

INTENDERE animum rei, ad v. in rem, to apply: Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, nervos, to exert; arcum, to bend; actionem v. litem alicui v. in aliquem, *alſo* impingere, to raiſe a law-ſuit againſt one; telum ei, v. in eum, to ſhoot at; manum v. digitum in aliquid, to point at; aliquo, ſc. ire, to go to; officia, to overdo, to do more than is required, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, v. rem velo, to cover, to veil.

PENDERE pecuniam, to pay; pœnas, to ſuffer; id parvi, to value it little.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, v. ex arbore, to hang; expectatione, v. ſuſpenſum detinere, to keep in ſuſpenſe; ædificium, to arch a houſe; naſo adunco, to ſneer at, Horat.

ABDERE ſe. literis, in literas, to hide or ſhut one's ſelf among books; ſe domum, rus, &c. domo, Virg. in ſilvas, tenebras, &c.

CONDERE urbem, to build; fructus, to lay up; in carcerem, to impriſon; carmen, to compoſe; lumina, to cloſe, Ovid. Jura, to eſtabliſh; terrâ, ſepulchro, in ſepulchro, to bury.

DEDERE ſe alicui, in ditionem alicujus, ad aliquem, to ſurrender; Deditus præceptori, et ſtudiis, fond of; vino epuliſque, engaged in, Nep. deditâ operâ, on purpoſe.

EDERE librum, to publiſh; et in lucem; ovum, to lay; ſonos, cantus, riſus, gemitus, queſtus, hinnitum, pugnam, ſtragem, to ſound, ſing, &c. munus gladiatorium, to exhibit a ſhew of gladiators; nomen, to mention; fœtus, to bring forth; extremum ſpiritum, to die; exempla cruciatus in aliquem, to inflict exemplary torture.

OBDERE peſſulum foribus, to bolt the door.

PRODERE arcem hoſtibus, to betray; aliquid poſteris, v. memoriæ, to hand down; genus ab aliquo, to derive; flaminem, interregem, to appoint; aliquot dies nuptiis, to put off, Ter.

REDDERE animum, ſe ſibi, to revive; animam v. vitam, to die; Latine, verbum verbo, to tranſlate; matrem, i. e. referre, to reſemble; epiſtolam alicui, to deliver.

SUBDERE calcar equo, to ſpur; ſpiritus alicui, to encourage.

CREDERE rem; homini, to believe; aliquid alicui, to truſt; pecuniam ei per ſyngraphan, to lend on bond or bill; rumoribus credi non oportet; Itaque credo ſi, &c, I ſuppoſe, Cic.

JUNGERE ſe cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem; dextram dextræ; equos currui; amnem ponte, to make a bridge.

ADJUNGERE acceſſionem ædibus, to build an addition to one's houſe; animum ad ſtudia, to apply.

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, enſem, to draw; frondes, to lop off; glandes, baccas, to beat down; rem, to waſte one's fortune, Hor. littus, to touch, to bruſh, or gaze upon, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, to hit the nail on the head.

ATTINGERE Britanniam navibus, to reach; reges, res ſummas, to mention, Nep. Aliquem cognatione, affinitate, to be related to; forum, to reach manhood, Cic. Res non te attingit, concerns.

FINGERE orationem, to poliſh; oratorem, to form; ſe ad arbitrium alterius, to adapt: Vultus amante fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FUNDERE aquam, to pour out; hoſtes, to rout.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, to produce; ærarium, to ſpend; odium, i. e. dimittere, to drop; gratiam collectam, i. e. perdere; omnia, quæ tacuerat, to tell.

FRANGERE nucem, to break; navem, to ſuffer ſhipwreck; fœdus, fidem, to violate; ſententiam ejus, to refute, Cic. hoſtem, to ſubdue.

AGERE gratias, to give thanks; vitam, to live; prædas, to plunder; fabulam, to act a play; triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, to triumph; nugas, to trifle; ambages, to beat about the buſh; ſtationem, cuſtodiam urbis, to be on guard; rimas, to chink, to leak; cauſam, to plead: de re, to ſpeak; radices, to take root; cuniculos, to undermine; undam, to raiſe a ſteam; animam, to be at the laſt gaſp; alias res, to be inattentive; feſtum diem, natalem, &c. to keep, to obſerve; actum, v. rem actam, to labour in vain; cenſum, & habere, to make a review of the people, their eſtates, &c. forum,

to hold a court to try cauſes; lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, to go to law with one; *hinc* actor, a proſecutor; in hereditatem, to claim; cum populo, to treat with, to lay before; decimum agit annum, he is ten years old; id agitur, that is the queſtion; libertas agitur, v. de libertate, is at ſtake; actum eſt de libertate, is loſt; actum eſt, ilicet, all is over; actum eſt de pace, was treated about; cum illo bene actum eſt, he has been lucky or well uſed; hoc age, mind what you are about.

ADIGERE milites ſacramento, ad v. in jusjurandum, in ſua verba, per jusjurandum, to force to enliſt; arbitrum, i. e. agere v. cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, to force to ſubmit to an arbitration, Cic.

COGERE copias, to bring together; ſenatum, to aſſemble; in ſenatum, *ſc.* minis, pignoribus captis, &c. to force to attend; agmen, to rally, to bring up; lac, to curdle; jus civile diffuſum & diſſipatum. in certa genera cogere, to digeſt, to arrange.

EXIGERE foras, to drive out, to divorce; aliquid ab aliquo, to require; ſarta tecta, *ſc.* et, *i. e.* ſarta et tecta, ut ſint bene reparata, to require that the public works be kept in good reparation, Cic. ſupplicium de aliquo, to inflict; ſua nomina, to demand or call in one's debts; ævum, annos, to ſpend; aliquid ad normam, to try or examine; columnam ad perpendiculum, to apply the plummet; to ſee if it be ſtraight; monumentum, to finiſh, Hor. tempus & modum, to ſettle; Virg. comœdiam, to diſapprove, to hiſs off, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, to bring back; pecuniam ex bonis venditis, to raiſe money; hoſtes ſub imperium, to reduce.

LEGERE oram, littus, to coaſt along; vela, to furl the ſails; halitum, to catch one's breath; milites, to enliſt; aliquem in ſenatum, to chooſe; ſacra, to ſteal, to commit ſacrilege, Hor.

TRAHERE obſidionem, bellum, to prolong; purpuras, to ſpin; aliquid in religionem, to ſcruple; navem remulco, to tow.

DETRAHERE aliquem, to draw down; alicui, v. de aliquo, de fama, to detract from, to leſſen one's fame; aliquid alicui, to take by force; laudem, v. de laudibus; novem partes multæ, to take from the fine, Nep.

EXTRAHERE diem, to ſpin out, to ſpend; certamen, bellum, judicium, to prolong.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, invectus curru, quadrigis, &c. riding in a chariot; invehi in portum ex alto, to enter; in aliquem, to inveigh againſt; provehi longius, to proceed too far.

CONSULERE cum, to aſk his advice; ei, to conſult for his good; de ſalute ſua, gravius in aliquem, to paſs a ſevere ſentence againſt; in commune, publicum, medium, to provide for the common good; verba boni, to take in good part; ego conſulor, my advice is aſked; mihi conſulitur, my good is conſulted; mihi conſultum ac proviſum eſt, *for* a me, I have taken care, *Cic.*

ADIMERE claves uxori, to divorce; annulum v. equum equiti, to take away from a knight the ring or horſe given him by the public, to degrade.

DIRIMERE litem, controverſiam, to determine.

EXIMERE aliquem ſervitio, noxæ, e vinculis, a culpa, de numero proſcriptorum, obſidione, to free; de dolio, to draw out; diem dicendo, to waſte in ſpeaking.

INTERIMERE ſe, to kill.

REDIMERE captivos, to ranſom; pecuaria de cenſoribus, to take or farm the public paſtures.

APPELLERE claſſe in Italiam, vel claſſem, to land on; ſe aliquo, Ter. ad villam noſtram navis appelletur, Cic. animum ad philoſophiam, to apply.

ANTECELLERE ei, *rarely* cum: excellere aliis, ſuper, inter, præter alios aliqua re, v. in re, to excel.

TOLLERE animos, to take courage; animos alicui, to encourage; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in aſtra, to extol; inducias, to break a truce; clamores, to cry; filium, to educate; de, *vel* e medio, to kill.

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex v. de eo, to take; pœnas, ſupplicium de aliquo, to puniſh; pecunias mutuas, to borrow; togam virilem, to put on the dreſs of a man; ſibi inimicitias, to get ill will; operam in re, *vel* in rem inſumere, to beſtow pains; ſumo tantum, *vel* hoc mihi, I take this upon me.

PREMERE caſeum, to make cheeſe; vocem, to be ſilent; dolorem corde, to conceal; veſtigia ejus, to follow; littus, to come near; pollicem, to ſave a gladiator; librum in nonum annum, to delay publiſhing, Hor.

EXPRIMERE ſuccum, to preſs out; riſum alicui; pecuniam ab aliquo, to force from; effigiem, to draw to the life; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. to tranſlate word for word.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, to imprint.

REPRIMERE ſe, & reprendere v. retinere, to check.

PONERE ſpem in homine v. re, & habere; caſtra, to pitch; vitem, to plant; vitam, to die; ova, to lay; inſidias alicui; panem convivis, *not* ante; perſonam amici, to lay aſide the character of a friend; præmia, to propoſe; pocula, to ſtake *or* lay; ſtudium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, to employ, to beſtow; aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, to reckon: ferocia corda, to lay aſide; aliquem in gratiam v. gratia, i. e. efficere gratioſum apud alterum, Cic.: ventos, to calm; hominem coloribus, faxo, to paint, engrave, Hor. pecuniam, to lay out at intereſt. Venti poſuere, are huſh'd, Virg. Pone eſſe victum eum, Ter. Poſitum ſit, ſuppoſe, grant, Cic.

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. to compoſe; lites, to ſettle; bellum, to finiſh by treaty; parva magnis, dicta cum factis, to compare; manus manibus, to join, Virg.

DEPONERE v. ponere togam prætextam, to lay aſide the dreſs of a boy; imperium & demittere, to lay down a command.

EXPONERE rem, to ſet forth *or* explain; frumentum, to expoſe to ſale, Cic. pueros, fœtus, to leave to periſh, Liv. exercitum, *ſc.* in terram, to land.

IMPONERE onus alicui v. in aliquem; aliquem in equum, to ſet upon; perſonam v. partes duriores ei, to lay a taſk *or* duty on one; alicui, to impoſe on, to deceive, Nep. honorem ei, to confer; vadimonium ei, to force to give bail, Nep. manum ſummam, v. extremam rei alicui, in aliqua re, to finiſh; pontem flumini, to make a bridge, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, to inſert, Nep.

OPPONERE ſe periculis & ad pericula, to expoſe; pignori, to pledge; manum fronti, ante oculos, Ovid.

PROPONERE aliquid ſibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, to propoſe, to ſet before; edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publice legenda affigere; congiarium, to promiſe a largeſs, a gift of corn or money.

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, to ſet a hen; teſtamentum, v. ſubjicere, to forge.

GANERE aliquem, to praiſe; ſigna, claſſicum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, to ſound an alarm; receptui, *rarely* -um, to ſound a retreat; tibiâ, to play on the pipe; ad tibiam, to ſing to it; palinodiam, to utter a recantation.

STERNERE lectos, to ſpread *or* cover the couches; equos, to harneſs; viam, to pave; æquora, to calm, Virg.

CARPERE agmen, to cut off the rear; ſomnos, quietem, to ſleep; viam, iter, to go, Virg. opera alterius, to cenſure; labores, virtutes, to diminiſh *or* obſcure, Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, fœdus, amicitiam, to violate; vocem v. ſilentium, to ſpeak, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, caſtris, &c. ſe portis, to break out; ſtomachum in aliquem, to vent paſſion; nubem, Virg.

QUÆRERE bonam gratiam ſibi, to ſeek *or* gain, Cic. ſermonem, to beat about for converſation, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, to make a fortune by merchandiſe; ex aliquo; & in aliquem de re aliqua per tormenta; to put to the rack; in dominum de ſervo quæri noluerunt Romani, Cic.

ANQUIRERE aliquid, to ſearch after; aliquem capitis, v. -te, to accuſe *or* try for a capital crime.

GERERE res, to perform; negotium malè, to manage; conſulatum, to bear, to manage; ſe bene *vel* male, to behave; morem ei, *vel* morigerari, to humour; civem, ſe pro cive, perſonam alicujus, to paſs for, to bear the character of; inimicitias *vel* ſimultatem cum aliquo, to be at enmity *or* variance with.

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, to inveigh againſt.

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, to ſuggeſt, to hint; ſumptus his rebus, to ſupply *or* afford; Horatium Bruto, to chuſe in place of, to put after, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, to raiſe, to ſpread accuſations.

CONSERERE manus, manu, certamen, pugnam, cum hoſtibus, inter ſe, to engage.

ASSERERE aliquid, to affirm; aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, to free; in ſervitutem, to reduce; divinam majeſtatem, to claim.

PETERE aliquid alicui; id ab eo, *rarely* eum; in beneficii gratiæque loco, Cic. to aſk; urbem Romam, murum, to go to, to make for; aliquem ſagittâ, lapide, to aim at; conſulatum; pœnas ab aliquo, & repetere, to puniſh.

COMPETERE animo, to be in one's ſenſes; in eum competit actio, an action lies againſt him, Cic.

REPETERE bona lege, *v.* proſequi lite, to recover by law; caſtra, to return to; aliquid memoriâ, to call to mind; alte, to trace from the beginning. Mihi nihil ſuppetit, multa ſuppetunt, I have; ſi vita ſuppetet, If life ſhall remain, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, *v.* ad aliquem; in ſuffragia, to ſend the people to vote; aulæum, mappam, to drop the curtain; talos, to throw the dice; ſenatum, to diſmiſs; timorem, to lay aſide; in acta, to regiſter, to record; ſanguinem, *vel* emittere, to let blood; noxam, to forgive; ſigna timoris, to ſhew; vocem, to ſpeak; habenas, *v.* remittere, to ſlacken; manu, et emittere, to free a ſlave; filium emancipare, to free a ſon from the power of his father; ſub jugum, to make to paſs under the yoke; inferias manibus diis, to ſacrifice to the infernal gods; rem, *v.* de re, to omit; mitto rem, I ſay nothing of fortune, Ter. in poſſeſſionem bonorum, to give the poſſeſſion of the debtor's effects; miſit orare, ut venirem; *i. e.* aliquem ad orandum, Ter.

AMITTERE litem, *v.* cauſam; vitam, fidem, lumina, aſpectum, to loſe, Cic.

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, to admit; equum, & permittere to gallop; delictum in ſe, to commit a fault; aves non admiſerunt, Liv.

COMMITTERE facinus, to commit; ſe alicui, *v.* in fidem alicujus, to entruſt; prælium, to engage; exercitum pugnæ, rem in caſum ancipitis eventûs prælii, to riſk a battle, Liv. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter ſe, to ſet at variance, *or* by the ears; rem eo, to bring to that paſs; gladiatores, pugiles Græcos cum Latinis, to match or pair; committere, ut, to cauſe; incommoda ſua legibus & judiciis, to ſeek redreſs by law.

COMPROMITTERE, Candidati *compromiſerunt*, H. S. quingenis in ſingulos apud M. Catonem depoſitis, petere ejus arbitratu, ut qui contra feciſſet, ab eo condemnaretur, made a compromiſe or agreement, &c.

DIMITTERE exercitum, to diſband; uxorem, & repudiare nuntium *v.* repudium ad eam remittere, to divorce.

PROMITTERE id ei, to promiſe; capillum, barbam, to let grow, Liv.

PERMITTERE alicui, to allow; ſe in fidem v. fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hoſtem; rem ſuffragiis populi, to let the people decide; tribunatum vexandis conſulibus, to give up, to employ, Liv.

REMITTERE animum, to eaſe; calces, to throw back; ex pecunia, de ſupplicio, tributo, &c. to abate; debitum, iras alicui, to give up, to forgive; juſtitium, to diſcontinue.

SUBMITTERE faſces populo, to lower; ſe v. animum, to ſubmit, to humble; percuſſores alicui, to ſuborn aſſaſſins.

TRANSMITTERE in Africam, neut. to paſs over.

VETERE in fugam, to put to flight; ab imo, to overthrow; ſolum, to go into baniſhment; id ei vitio v. crimini, & in crimen, to blame; in ſuperbiam, to impute; Platonem, Latine Græca, Græca *vel* ex Græcis in Latinum, to tranſlate; pollicem, to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb; terram, to plough; crateram, to empty, Virg. Salus *vel* cauſa in eo vertitur, depends; fortuna verterat, Liv. Annus vertens, a whole year, Nep. Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, proſper.

ANIMADVERTERE id, to obſerve; in eum verberibus, morte, &c. to puniſh.

ADVERTERE agmen urbi, to bring up to, Virg. oras, to arrive at; aures, mentes, animum v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, to attend to; in aliquem, *oftener* animadvertere, to puniſh.

ANTEVERTERE ei, to come before; damnationem veneno, to prevent; rem rei, to prefer, Plaut.

INTERVERTERE pecuniam alicujus, & aliquem pecuniâ, to embezzle, to cheat; candelabrum, to ſteal, to pilfer; promiſſum & receptum, ſc. Dolobellæ conſulatum, intervertit, ad ſeque tranſtulit, treacherouſly withheld, Cic.

PRÆVERTERE, & -ti, dep. ventos curſu, to outſtrip; deſiderium plebis, to prevent; metum ſupplicii morte voluntariâ, Liv. Aliquid alicui rei, to put before, Id.

SISTERE vadimonium; ſe in judicio, to appear in court at one's trial; nec ſiſti poſſe, nor could the ſtate be ſaved, Liv.

ASSISTERE ei, to ſtand by; ad fores; contra, ſuper eum.

CONSISTERE in digitos, to ſtand on tiptoe; in anchoris, ad anchoram, to ride at anchor; frigore, to be frozen, Ovid. Spes in velis conſiſtebat, depended on; virtus in actione conſiſtit, Cic.

INSISTERE jacentibus, to ſtand upon; veſtigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ; in re aliqua, in rem, v. rei; in dolos, negotium, Plaut. to inſiſt upon, to urge.

OBSISTERE ei, to ſtop, to oppoſe.

RESISTERE ei, to reſiſt

SUBSISTERE, to ſtand ſtill; ſumptui, to bear.

SOLVERE pecuniam ei, to pay; verſurâ, to pay debt by borrowing from another, Ter. Fidem, to break a promiſe, *or according to others*, to perform, Ter. And IV. I. 29. litem æſtimatam, to pay the fine impoſed on him, Nep. Votum, to diſcharge; obſidionem

urbis, *v.* urbem obſidione, to raiſe a ſiege; navem, e portu, to ſet ſail; epiſtolam, *v.* reſignare, to break open; aliquem legibus et legum vinculis, to free from; ſolvitur in ſomnos, Virg. Oratio ſoluta, i. e. libera, numeris non aſtricta et devincta, proſe.

DISSOLVERE ſocietatem, to break.

RESOLVERE vocem, *vel* ora, to break ſilence, Virg. jura, to violate; vectigal, to take off taxes, Tacit. In pulverem, to reduce to.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex *v.* ab aliquo, to hear from one; de aliquo, about one, alſo from one, as, ſæpe hoc audivi de patre, for ex patre, Cic. Audire bene *v.* male apud ſocios, ab omnibus, to be well ſpoken of, to have a good character; rexque paterque audiſti, have been called, Hor. Antigonus credit de ſuo adventu eſſe auditum, Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pactionem, certamen, manus, nihilum, &c. in ſuſpicionem, odium, gratiam, &c. in jus, to go to law, Liv. in circulum, into a company, Nep. Hæreditas ei venit, he has ſucceeded to an eſtate: ei uſu venit, happened, Nep. Quod in buccam venerit, ſcribito, occurs, Cic.

ADVENIRE et adventare ei, urbem, ad urbem, to come to.

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, et antevertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus, conſilia et itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium; fratrem, to meet with, to ſpeak to; ego et frater conveniemus, copiæ convenient, will meet together; convenit mihi cum fratre de hac re, inter me et fratrem, inter nos; hæc fratri mecum conveniunt, I and my brother are agreed; fævis inter ſe convenit urſis, Juv. Ipſi ſecum non convenit, *v.* ipſe, he is inconſiſtent; pax convenit, is agreed upon; rem conventuram putamus, Cic. conditiones non convenerunt; mores conveniunt, agree; calcei pedibus *v.* ad pedes conveniunt, fit, ſuit; hoc in illum convenit: Catilinam interfectum eſſe convenit, ought to have been ſlain, Cic. Convenire in manum, the uſual form of marriage, named Coemptio, whereby women were called matres familias.

SENTIRE ſonorem, colorem, &c. to perceive; cum aliquo, to be of one's opinion; bene *vel* male de eo, to think well or ill of him.

CONSENTIRE tibi, tecum, inter ſe; alicui rei, de *v.* in aliqua re; ad aliquid peragendum, to agree; *So* diſſentire; et ab aliquo, to diſagree; ne vita orationi diſſentiat, Sen.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philoſophiam, to profeſs, to teach publicly; ſe candidatum, to declare himſelf a candidate for an office; pecunias, agros, nomina, &c. apud cenſorem, to give an account of, to declare how much one has.

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter ſe; *ſometimes* alicui, ad, *v.* apud aliquem; aliquid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI feras; ſectam Cæſaris, to be of his party, Cic. *Aſſequi*, conſequi, to overtake; gloriam, to attain. Conſequi hæreditatem, to get, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, laudibus, &c. to love, praiſe, &c.

NITI haſtâ; in cubitum, to lean; ejus conſilio, in eo, to depend on; ad gloriam, ad, *v.* in ſumma, to aim at; in vetitum, in adverſum, contra aliquem, pro aliquo, to ſtrive; gradibus, to aſcend.

UTI eo familiariter, to be familiar with one; ventis adverſis, to have croſs winds; honore uſus, one who has enjoyed a poſt of honor.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, *v.* -no, -re; ejus opinionis, *v.* ea opinione; in maxima ſpe; in timore, luctu, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, cum imperio; magno periculo, *v.* in periculo; in tuto; apud ſe, in his ſenſes; ſui juris, *v.* mancipii, to be at his own diſpoſal; Res eſt in vado, is ſafe, Ter. Eſt animus, *ſc.* mihi, I have a mind, Virg. Eſt ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. There is cauſe; bene, male eſt mihi, with me; nihil eſt mihi tecum, I have nothing to do with you: Quid eſt tibi, *ſc.* rei, What is the matter with you? Ter. Cernere erat, one might ſee; religio eſt mihi id facere, I ſcruple to do it; ſi eſt, ut facere velit, ut facturus ſit, ut admiſerit, &c. for ſi velit, &c. Ter. Eſt ut viro vir latius ordinet arbuſta ſulcis, it happens, Hor. Certum eſt facere, *ſc.* mihi, I am reſolved, Ter. Non certum eſt, quid faciam, I am uncertain, Id. Caſſius quærere ſolebat, CUI BONO FUERIT? Omnibus bono fuit, it was of advantage, Cic.

ADESSE pugnæ, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, to be preſent; alicui, to favour, to aſſiſt; ſcribendo, *v.* eſſe ad ſcribendum, to ſubſcribe one's name to a decree of the ſenate, Cic. conſilio, utrique, to be a counſellor to, Nep.

ABESSE domo, urbe, a domo, to be abſent; alicui, *v.* deeſſe, to be wanting, not to aſſiſt; *a ſole*, to ſtand out of the ſun; ſumptus funeri defuit, he had not money to bury him, Liv. abeſſe a perſona principis, to be inconſiſtent with the character, Nep. Paulum *v.*

parum abfuit quin urbem caperent, quin occideretur, &c. they were near taking, &c. Tantum abeſt ne enervetur oratio, ut, &c. is ſo far from being, &c. Cic. Tantum abfuit a cupiditate pecuniæ, a ſocietate ſceleris, &c. Nep.

Interesse convivio, *v* in convivio, to be at a feaſt; anni decem interfuerunt, intervened; ſtulto intelligens quid intereſt, Ter. Hoc dominus et pater intereſt, Id. Inter hominem & belluam hoc intereſt, Cic. differ in this, this is the difference; multum intereſt, utrum, it is of great importance. Pons inter eos intereſt, is between, Cic.

Præesse exercitui, to command; comitiis, judicio, quæſtioni, to preſide in *or* at.

Oaesse ei, to hurt, to hinder.

Superesse, to be over and above; alicui, to ſurvive; modo vita ſuperſit, *ſc.* mihi, if I live; ſupereſt, ut, it remains, that.

Ire ad arma, ad faga, to go to war; in jus, to go to law; pedibus in ſententiam alicujus, to agree with; viam, *v.* viâ; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, menſis it, paſſes.

Abire magiſtratu, to lay down an office; in ora hominum, to be in every body's mouth; ab emptione, to retract his bargain; decem menſes abierunt, have paſt, Ter. Non hoc tibi ſic abibit, i. e. non feres hoc impune, Ter. Abi in malam rem, a form of imprecation.

Adire periculum capitis, to run the hazard of one's life.

Exire vitâ, e, *v.* de vita, to die; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore, Id. tela, to avoid, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Vejenti populo exierat, had expired, Liv.

Inire magiſtratum; ſuffragium, rationem, conſilium, pugnam, viam, &c. to enter upon; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum *v.* ab eo, to gain his favour: Ineunte ætate, vere, anno, &c. in the beginning of; *but we ſeldom ſay*, Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte ætate, from our early years.

Obire diem edicti, *vel* auctionis, judicium, vadimonium, to be preſent at; provinciam, domos noſtras, to viſit, to go through, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, to perform; pugnas, Virg. mortem, *v.* morte; diem ſupremum, *v.* diem, to die.

Præire alicui, to go before; verba, carmen, *v.* ſacramentum alicui, to repeat *or* read over before; alicui voce, quid judicet, to preſcribe *or* direct by crying, Cic.

Prodire in publicum, to go abroad; non præterit te, you are not ignorant, Cic. Dies induciarum præteriit, is paſt, Nep.

Redire in gratiam cum aliquo, to become friends again.

Subire murum, *v.* -o, ad montes, to come up to; laborem, *v.* -i, onus, pœnam, periculum, to undergo; ſpes, timor ſubiit animum, came into.

Velle aliquem, *ſc.* alloqui *v.* conventum, to deſire to ſpeak with; alicui, ejus causâ, to wiſh one's good; tibi conſultum volo; nihil

tibi negatum volo, I wiſh to deny, Liv. Quid ſibi vult? What does he mean? Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; ſi quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, *ſc.* eſſe, I will admoniſh them again and again, Cic. nollem factum, I am ſorry it was done; nollem huc exitum, *ſc.* eſſe a me, I wiſh I had not come out here, Ter.

FERRE legem, to propoſe *or* make; privilegium de aliquo, to propoſe *or* paſs an act of impeachment againſt one, Cic. rogationem ad populum, to bring in a bill; conditiones ei, to offer *terms*; ſuffragium, to vote; ſententiam, to give an opinion; centuriam, *tribum*, to gain the vote of; perdere, to loſe it; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia ſuffragia, to gain all the votes; repulſam, to be rejected; fructum, hoc fructi, to reap, Ter. lætitiam de re, to rejoice; præ ſe, to pretend *or* declare openly; alienam perſonam, to diſguiſe one's ſelf; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter. manus, to engage, Virg. acceptum et expenſum, to mark down as received and ſpent *or* lent, as Dr. and Cr. Cic. animus, opinio fert, inclines; tempus, res, cauſa fert, allows, requires.

CONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, in *vel* erga aliquem, to ſhew; beneficia, culpam in eum, to confer, to lay; operam, tempus, ſtudium ad *vel* in rem, et impendere, to apply; capita inter ſe, conſilia ſua, to lay their heads together, to conſult; ſigna, arma, manus, to engage; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, to ſet foot to foot; rationes, to caſt up accounts; caſtra caſtris, to encamp over againſt one another; ſe in, *vel* ad urbem, to go to; tributa, to pay; ſe alicui, *vel* cum aliquo, to compare; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferunt ad aliquid; oratori futuro, ſerve, are uſeful to, Quinct.

DEFERRE ſitulam *v.* ſitellam, to bring the ballot-box; aliquid ad aliquem, to carry word, to tell; *rarely* alicui; cauſam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; ſummam rerum ad eum, to confer; in beneficiis ad ærarium, to recommend for a public ſervice, Cic. aliquem ambitûs, de ambitu, nomen alicujus, ad prætorem, apud magiſtratum, to accuſe of bribery; primas ſc. partes ei, to give him the preference, Cic.

DIFFERRE *v.* transferre rem in annum; poſt bellum, diem ſolutionis, to put off; rumores, to ſpread; ab aliquo, alicui, inter ſe, moribus, to differ in character; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, to be diſtracted *or* torn aſunder, Cic. & Ter.

EFFERRE fruges, to produce; verba, to utter; verbum de verbo expreſſum, to tranſlate, Ter. pedem domo, to go out; corpus amplo funere, et cum funere, to bury; ad honorem, ad cœlum laudibus, to raiſe, to extol; foras peccatum, to divulge.

INFERRE bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, to bring upon; ſigna, ſe, pedem, to advance; litem, *v.* periculum capitis alicui, *v.* in aliquem, to bring one to a trial for his life.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem, in discrimen, to expose, to present.

PERFERRE legem, to carry through, to pass it.

PRÆFERRE facem ei, to carry before; salutem reipublicæ suis commodis, et anteferre, anteponere, to prefer. Prælatus equo, riding before.

PROFERRE imperium, to enlarge; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, to publish; nuptias, diem, to delay.

REFERRE alicui, to answer; se v. pedem, to retreat; gratiam alicui, to make a requital; par pari, Ter. victoriam ab, v. ex aliquo, et reportare, to gain; institutum, to renew; judicia ad equestrem ordinem, to restore to the Equites the right of judging; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, to lay before; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, commentarium, &c. to mark down; aliquid acceptum alicui, et in acceptum, to acknowledge one's self indebted; pecunias acceptas et expensas, nomina v. summas in codicem accepti et expensi, to mark down accounts; alienos mores ad suos, to judge of by; in v. inter ærarios, to reduce to the lowest class; in numerum deorum, in v. inter deos, et reponere, to rank among; pugnas, res gestas, to relate; patrem ore, to resemble; amissos colores, to regain, Horat.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabulas, to post one's books, to state accounts; in Latinam linguam, to translate; verba, to use metaphorically; culpam in eum et rejicere, to lay the blame on him.

II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbăton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

1. ELLIPSIS.

ELLIPSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense; as, Aiunt, ferunt, dicunt, perhibent, scil. homines: Dic mihi, Damœta, cujum pecus; that is, Dic *(tu)* mihi, Damœta, *(eum hominem)* cujum pecus *(est hoc pecus.)* Aberant bidui, scil. iter *vel* itinere. Decies sestertium, scil. centena millia. Quid multa? scil.

dicam. Antiquum obtines, ſcil. morem *vel* inſtitutum, Plaut. Hodie in ludum occæpi ire literarium, ternas jam ſcio, ſcil. literas, i. e. AMO, Id. Triduo abs te nullas acceperam, ſcil. literas, i. e. epiſtolam, Cic. Brevi dicam, ſcil. ſermone: *So* Complecti, reſpondere, &c. brevi. Dii meliora, ſc. faciant: Rhodum volo, inde Athenas, ſc. ire, Id. Bellicum, *vel* claſſicum canere, ſc. ſignum, Liv. Civicâ donatus, ſc. coronâ; *So* obſidionalem, muralem adeptus, &c. Id. Epiſtola librarii manu eſt ſc. ſcripta, Cic. So in Engliſh, "The twelve," i. e. apoſtles; "The elect," i. e. perſons.

When a conjunction is to be ſupplied, it is called ASYNDETON; as, Deus optimus maximus, ſcil. et; Sartum tectum conſervare, i. e. ſartum et tectum; *So* Abiit, exceſſit, evaſit, erupit, Cic. Ferte citi flammas, date vela, impellite remos, Virg. Velis nolis, ſcil. ſeu.

To this figure may be reduced moſt of thoſe irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variouſly claſſed by grammarians, under the names of ENNALAGE, i. e. the changing of words and and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; ANTIPTŌSIS, i. e. the putting of one caſe for another; HELLENISM or GRÆCISM, i. e. imitating the conſtruction of the Greeks; SYNESIS, i. e. referring the conſtruction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the ſenſe, &c. thus, Samnitium duo millia cæſi, *is* Duo millia *(hominum)* Samnitium *(fuerunt homines)* cæſi, Liv. *So* Monſtrum quæ, ſc. mulier, Hor. Scelus qui, ſc. homo, Ter. Omnia Mercurio ſimilis, ſc. ſecundum, Virg. Miſſi magnis de rebus uterque, legati; i. e. Miſſi legati *(et)* uterque *(legatus miſſus)* de magnis rebus, Horat. Servitia repudiabat, cujus, ſc. ſervitii, Sall. Cat. 51. Familia noſtra, quorum, &c. ſc. hominum, Sall. Concurſus populi, mirantium, Liv. Illum ut vivat, optant, for ut ille vivat, Ter. Populum late regem, for regnantem, Virg. Expediti militum, for milites; Claſſis ſtabat Rhegii, for ad Rhegium, Liv. Latium Capuaque agro multati, ſc. homines, Id. Utraque formoſæ, ſc. mulieres, Ovid. Aperite aliquis oſtium, Ter. Senſit delapſus, for delapſum, ſc. ſe eſſe, Virg.

When a writer frequently uſes the Ellipſis, his ſtyle is ſaid to be elliptical or conciſe.

2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is abſolutely neceſſary to expreſs the ſenſe; as, Video oculis, I ſee with my eyes; Sic ore locuta eſt: adeſt præſens: Nuſquam gentium; vivere vitam: ſervire ſervitutem; Quid mihi Celſus agit? Fac me ut ſciam, &c. Suo ſibi gladio hunc jugulo, Ter. Suo ſibi ſucco vivunt, Plaut.

When a conjunction is uſed apparently redundant, it is called POLYSYNDETON; as, Una Euruſque Notuſque ruunt, Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is ſo expreſſed as if there were two, it is called HENDIADYS; as, Pateris libamus et auro, *for* aureis pateris, Virg.

When ſeveral words are uſed to expreſs one thing, it is called PERIPHRASIS; as, Urbs Trojæ, *for* Troja, Virg. Res voluptatum, *for* voluptates, Plaut. Uſus purpurarum, *for* purpura; Genus piſcium, *for* piſces, Hor.

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the tranſgreſſion of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly uſed in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various ſorts into which it is divided, are, Anaſtrŏphe, Hyſtĕron protĕron, Hypallăge, Synchĕſis, Tmeſis, and Parenthĕſis.

1. ANASTRŎPHE is the inverſion of words, or the placing of that word laſt which ſhould be firſt; as, Italiam contra; His accenſa ſuper; Spemque metumque inter dubii; *for* contra Italiam, ſuper his, inter ſpem, &c. Virg. Ferram ſol facit are, *for* arefacit, Lucret.

2. HYSTERON PROTERON is when that is put in the former part of the ſentence, which, according to the ſenſe, ſhould be in the latter; as, Valet atque vivit, *for* vivit atque valet, Ter.

3. HYPALLAGE is the exchanging of caſes; as, Dare claſſibus auſtros, *for* dare claſſes auſtris, Virg.

4. SYNCHESIS is a confuſed and intricate arrangement of words; as, Saxa vocant Itali mediis quæ in fluctibus aras; *for* Quæ ſaxa in mediis fluctibus Itali vocant aras, Virg.

5. TMESIS is the diviſion of a compound word, and the interpoſing of other words betwixt its parts; as, Septem ſubjecta trioni gens, *for* Septentrioni, Virg. Quæ meo cunque animo libitum eſt facere, *for* quæcunque, Ter.

6. PARENTHESIS is the inſerting of a member into the body of a ſentence, which is neither neceſſary to the ſenſe, nor at all affects the conſtruction; as, Tityre, dum redeo, *(brevis eſt via)* paſce capellas, Virg.

III. ANALYSIS AND TRANSLATION.

The difficulty of tranſlating either from Engliſh into Latin, or from Latin into Engliſh, ariſes in a great meaſure from the different arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inflection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus, in Latin, we can either say, Alexander vicit Darium, *or* Darium vicit Alexander, *or* Alexander Darium vicit, *or* Darium Alexander vicit; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious: but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius.* This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, Him the Eternal hurl'd, *Milton.* Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you. But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorial.*

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another, according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorial* order is when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However to a beginner the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or shew its dependence on what went before; *next*, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence: supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique persuade esse te quidem mihi carissimum; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis præceptisque lætabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and aſſure yourſelf that you are indeed very dear unto me; but ſhall be much dearer, if you ſhall take delight in ſuch writings and inſtructions.

This compound ſentence may be reſolved into theſe five ſimple ſentences: 1. *Igitur, mi* (fili) *Cicero*, (tu) *vale*, 2. *et* (tu) *perſuade tibi* (ipſi) *te eſſe quidem* (filium) *cariſſimum mihi*: 3. *ſed* (tu perſuade tibi ipſi te) *fore* (filium) *cariorem* (mihi in) *multo* (negotio) 4. *ſi* (tu) *lætabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *et* (ſi tu lætabere talibus) *præceptis*.

1. Fare *(you)* well then, my *(ſon)* Cicero, 2. and aſſure *(your)* yourſelf that you are indeed *(a ſon)* very dear to me; 3. but *(aſſure you yourſelf that you)* ſhall be *(a ſon)* much dearer *(to me)* 4. if you ſhall take delight in ſuch writings, 5. and *(if you ſhall take delight in ſuch)* inſtructions.

When a learner firſt begins to tranſlate from the Latin, he ſhould keep as ſtrictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progreſs, ſomething more will be requiſite. He ſhould then be accuſtomed, as much as poſſible, to tranſfuſe the beauties of an author, from the one language into the other. For this purpoſe it will be neceſſary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but alſo with the different kinds of ſtyle adapted to different ſorts of compoſition, and to different ſubjects; together with the various turns of thought and expreſſion which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric*.

The QUANTITY of SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a ſyllable is the ſpace of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the meaſures of Verſe, is called *PROSODY*.

Syllables, with reſpect to their quantity, are either *long* or *ſhort*.

A long ſyllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a ſhort; as, *tĕndĕrĕ*.

Some ſyllables are *common*: that is, ſometimes long, and ſometimes ſhort; as the ſecond ſyllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is ſaid to be long or ſhort by nature, which is always ſo by cuſtom, or by the uſe of the poets.

In polyſyllables or long words, the laſt ſyllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the laſt ſyllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a ſyllable is not fixed by ſome particular rule, it is ſaid to be long or ſhort by *authority*, that is, according to the uſage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* is ſaid to be ſhort by authority, becauſe it is always made ſhort by the Latin poets.

In moſt Latin words of one or two ſyllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly diſtinguiſh by the ear a long ſyllable from a ſhort. Thus *le* in *lĕgo* and *lēgi* ſeem to be founded equally long; but when we pronounce them in compoſition, the difference is obvious; thus, perlĕgo, perlēgi; relĕgo, -ĕre; relēgo, -āre, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all ſyllables, the latter only to ſome certain ſyllables.

GENERAL RULES.

1. A vowel before another vowel is ſhort; as, *Mĕus, alĭus*: ſo *nĭhil*: *h* in verſe being conſidered only as a breathing. In like manner in Engliſh, *crĕate, bĕhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo, fīebam*, &c. unleſs when followed by *r*; as, *fĭĕri, fĭerem*; thus,

Omnia jam fient, fĭĕri quæ poſſe negabam, Ovid.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declenſion, is long; as, *ſpecĭēi*. So is the firſt ſyllable in *æer, dīus, ēheu*, and the penultima in *aulāi, terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi, Cāi*, and ſuch like words; but we ſometimes find *Pompei* in two ſyllables, Hor. II. Od. 7.

Exc. 3. The firſt ſyllable in *obe* and *Diana* is common; ſo likewiſe is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illĭus, unĭus*, &c. to be read long in proſe. *Alĭus*, in the genitive is always long; *alterĭus* ſhort.

In Greek words when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is ſhort; as, Danăe, Idĕa, Sophĭa, Symphonĭa, Simŏis, Hyades, Phăon, Deucalĭon, Pygmalĭon, Thebăis, &c.

Often it is long; as, Lycāon, Machāon, Didymāon; Amphīon, Arīon, Ixīon, Pandīon; Nāis, Lāis, Achāi; Briſcis, Cadmēis; Latōus, & Latōis, Myrtōus, Nerēius, Priamēius; Achelōius, Minōius; Archelāus, Menelāus, Amphiarāus; Æneas, Peneus, Epeus, Acriſionēus, Adamantēus, Phœbēus, Gigantēus; Darīus, Baſilius, Eugenius, Bacchius; Caſſiopēa, Cæſarēa, Chæronēa, Cytherēa, Galatēa, Laodicēa, Medēa, Panthēa, Penelopēa; Clīo, Enyo, Elegīa, Iphigenīa, Alexandrīa, Thalīa, Antiochīa, idololatrīa, litanīa, politīa, &c. Laertes, Dēiphŏbus, Deĭjanīra, Trōes, herōes, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, Chorea, platea, Malea, Nerĭdes, canopeum, Orion, Geryon, Eos, eōus, &c. So in foreign words, Michael, Iſrael, Raphael, Abraham, &c.

The accuſative of nouns in *eus* is uſually ſhort; as, Orphĕa, Salmonĕa, Capharĕa, &c. but ſometimes long; as, Idomenēa, Ilionēa, Virg. Inſtead of Elegīa, Cytherēa, we find Elegēia, Cythĕrēia, Ovid. But

the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly underſtood without the knowledge of Greek.

In Engliſh a vowel before another is alſo ſometimes lengthened; as, *fcīence, idēa.*

2. A vowel before two conſonants, or before a double conſonant, is long, *(by poſition, as it is called;)* as,

ārma, fāllo, āxis, gāza, māior; the compounds of *jugum* excepted; as, bĭjŭgus, quadrijŭgus, &c.

When the foregoing word ends in a ſhort vowel, and the following begins with two conſonants or a double one, that vowel is ſometimes lengthened by poſition; as,

Ferte citi flammas, date vēlā, ſcandite muros, Virg.
But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common; as the middle ſyllable in *volucris, tenebræ*, thus,

Et primò ſimilis volŭcri, mox vera volūcris, Ovid.
Nox tenĕbras profert, Phœbus fugat inde tenēbras, Id.

But in proſe theſe words are pronounced ſhort. *So* peragro, pharetra, podagra, chiragra, celebris, latebræ, &c.

To make this rule hold, three things are requiſite. The vowel muſt be naturally ſhort, the mute muſt go before the liquid, and be in the ſame ſyllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verſe, becauſe *a* in *pater* is naturally ſhort, or always ſo by cuſtom: but *a* in *matris, acris*, is always long, becauſe long by nature or cuſtom in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *falūbris, ambulācrum*, is always long; becauſe they are derived from *falus, falūtis*, and *ambulātum*. So *a* in *arte, abluo*, &c. is long by poſition, becauſe the mute and the liquid are in different ſyllables.

L and *r* only are conſidered as liquids in Latin words; *m* and *s* do not take place except in Greek words.

3. A contracted ſyllable is long; as,

Nil, *for* nihil; mî, *for* mihi; cōgo, *for* coăgo; alīus, *for* aliius; tibīcen, *for* tibiicen; ît, *for* iit; sōdes, *for* ſi audes: nōlo, *for* non volo; bigæ, for bijŭgæ, &c.

4. A diphthong is always long; as,

Aurum, Cæſar, Eubœa, &c. Only *præ* in compoſition before a vowel is commonly ſhort; as, præire, præuſtus; thus,

Nec totâ tamen ille prior præunte carinâ. Virg.
Stipitibus duris agitur ſudibuſque præuſtis. Id.

But it is ſometimes lengthened; as,

——— cum vacuus domino præiret Arion. Statius.

In Engliſh we pronounce ſeveral of the diphthongs ſhort, by ſinking the ſound of one vowel; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

5. Preterites of two ſyllables lengthen the former ſyllable; as, *Vēni, vīdi, vīci.*

Except bĭbi, ſcĭdi, *from* ſcindo, fĭdi *from* findo, tŭli, dĕdi, ſtĕti.

6. Supines of two ſyllables lengthen the former ſyllable; as, *Vīſum, cāſum, mōtum.*

Except *sătum*, from *sĕro*; *cĭtum*, from *cieo*; *lĭtum*, from *lĭno*; *sĭtum*, from *sĭno*; *flătum*, from *flo*; *ĭtum*, from *eo*; *dătum*, from *do*; *rŭtum*, from the compounds of *ruo*; *quĭtum*, from *queo*; *rătus*, from *reor*.

Preterites doubled.

7. Preterites which double the firſt ſyllable, have both the firſt ſyllables ſhort; as,

Cĕcĭdi, tĕtĭgi, pĕpŭli, pĕpĕri, dĭdĭci, tŭtŭdi: *except* cĕcīdi, *from* cædo; pĕpēdi, *from* pēdo; and when two conſonants intervene; as, fĕfelli, tĕtendi, &c.

INCREASE OF NOUNS.

A noun is ſaid to increaſe, when it has more ſyllables in any of the oblique caſes than in the nominative; as, *rex, rēgis.* Here *re* is called the *increaſe* or *crement*, and ſo through all the other caſes. The laſt ſyllable is never eſteemed a crement.

Some nouns have a double increaſe, that is, increaſe by more ſyllables than one; as, *iter, itĭnĕris.*

A noun in the plural is ſaid to increaſe, when in any caſe it has more ſyllables than the genitive ſingular; as, *genus, genĕrī, genĕrōrum.*

Nouns of the firſt, fourth, and fifth declenſions, do not increaſe in the ſingular number, unleſs where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus, fructŭi; res, rĕi*; which fall under Rule 1.

Third Declenſion.

8. Nouns of the third declenſion which increaſe, make *a* and *o* long; *e, i*, and *u* ſhort; as, *Pietātis, honōris; muliĕris, lapĭdis, murmŭris.*

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declenſion. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in A ſhortens *atis* in the genitive; as, dogma, -ătis, poema, -ătis.

O.

O ſhortens *ĭnis*, but lengthens *ōnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Cardo*, -*ĭnis*; *Virgo*, -*ĭnis*; *Anio*, -*ĭnis*; *Cicero*, -*ōnis*. Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Moſt of them ſhorten the genitive; as, *Macĕdo*, -*ōnis*; *Saxo*, -*ōnis*: Some are long; as, *Sueſſiones*, *Vettŏnes*. *Brittones*, is common.

I. C. D.

I ſhortens *ĭtis*; as, *Hydromĕli*, -*ĭtis*. *Es* lengthens -*ētis*; as, *Helos*, -*ētis*.

A noun in D ſhortens the crement; as, *David*, -*ĭdis*.

L.

Maſculines in AL ſhorten *ălis*; as, *Sal*, *ălis*; *Hannibal*, -*ălis*; *Haſdrubal*, -*ălis*; but neuters lengthen it; as, *animal*, -*ālis*.

Sōlis from *ſol* is long; alſo Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Michael*, -*ēlis*. Other nouns in *l* ſhorten the crement; as, *Vigil*, -*ĭlis*; *conſul*, -*ŭlis*.

N.

Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon*, -*ōnis*; *Chiron*, -*ōnis*. Some ſhorten it; as, *Memnon*, -*ŏnis*; *Actæon*, -*ŏnis*.

EN ſhortens *inis*; as, *flumen*, -*ĭnis*; *tibīcen*, -*ĭnis*. Other nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *anis*; as, *Titan*, -*ānis*: EN *ēnis*; as, *Siren*, -*ēnis*: IN *īnis*; as, *delphin*, -*īnis*: YN *ȳnis*; as, *Pborcyn*, -*ȳnis*.

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *aris*; as, *calcar*, -*āris*. Except the following, *bacchar*, -*ăris*; *jubar*, -*ăris*; *nectar*, -*ăris*: Alſo the adjective *par*, -*păris*, and its compounds, *impar*, -*ăris*; *diſpar*, -*ăris*, *&c.*

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive, Nar, Nāris, the name of a river; fur, fūris; ver, vēris: Alſo Recimer, -ēris; Byzer, -ēris; Ser, Sēris; Iber, -ēris, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen teris; as, crater, -ēris; character, -ēris. Except æther, -ĕris.

4. OR lengthens oris; as, amor, -ōris. Except neuter nouns; as, marmor, -ŏris; æquor, -ŏris: Greek nouns in tor; as, Hector, -ŏris; Actor, -ŏris; rhetor, -ŏris: Alſo arbor, -ŏris; and memor, -ŏris.

5. Other nouns in R ſhorten the genitive; AR aris, *maſc.*; as, Cæſar, -ăris; Hamilcar, -ăris; lar, lăris.

ER *eris* of any gender; as, *aer*, *aĕris*; *mulier*, *-ĕris*; *cadāver*, *-ĕris*; *iter*, anciently *itĭner*, *itinĕris*; *verbĕris*, from the obsolete *verber*. UR *uris*; as, *vultur*, *-ŭris*; *murmur*, *-ŭris*. YR *yris*; as, *Martyr*, *-yris*.

A S.

1. Nouns in AS which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pietas*, *-ātis*; *Mæcēnas*, *-ātis*. Except *anas*, *-ătis*.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement; as, Greek nouns in *ădis*, *ătis*, and *ănis*; thus, *Pallas*, *-ădis*; *artocreas*, *-ătis*; *Melas*, *ănis*, the name of a river. So *vas*, *vădis*; *mas*, *măris*: But *vas*, *vāsis*, is long.

E S.

ES shortens the crement; as, *miles*, *-ĭtis*; *Ceres*, *-ĕris*; *pes*, *pĕdis*.

Except *locŭples*, *-ētis*; *quies*, *-ētis*; *manſues*, *-ētis*, *hæres*, *-ēdis*; *merces*, *-ēdis*.

I S.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis*, *-ĭdis*; *Sanguis*, *-ĭnis*; *Phyllis*, *-ĭdis*.

Except *Glis*, *glīris*; and Latin nouns which have *ītis*; as, *lis*, *lītis*; *dis*, *dītis*; *Quiris*, *-ītis*; *Samnis*, *-ītis*: But *Charis*, a Greek noun, has *Charĭtis*.

The following alſo lengthen the crement: *Crenis*, *-īdis*; *Pſophis*, *-īdis*; *Neſis*, *-īdis*, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have alſo *in*; as, *Salămis*, or *-in*, *Salamīnis*.

O S.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos*, *-ōtis*; *flos*, *flōris*.

Except *Bos*, *bŏvis*; *compos*, *-ŏtis*; *impos*, *-ŏtis*.

U S.

US ſhortens the crement; as, *tempus*, *-ŏris*; *tripus*, *-ŏdis*.

Except nouns which have *ūdis*, *ūris*, and *ūtis*; as, *incus*, *ūdis*; *jus*, *jūris*; *ſalus*, *-ūtis*. But *Ligus* has *Ligŭris*; the obſolete *pecus*, *pecŭdis*; and *intercus*, *-ūtis*.

The neuter of the comparative has *ōris*; as, *melius*, *-ōris*.

Y S.

YS ſhortens *ydis* or *ydos*; as, *chlamys*, *-ydis*, or *-ydos*: and lengthens *ynis*; as, *Trachys*, *-ynis*.

BS. PS. MS.

Nouns in S with a conſonant going before, ſhorten the penult of the genitive; as, cælebs, -ĭbis; inops, -ŏpis; hiems, -ĕmis.

Except Cyclops, -ōpis; ſeps, -sēpis; gryps, grȳphis; Cercops, -ōpis; plebs, plēbis; hydrops, -ōpis.

T.

T ſhortens the crement; as, *caput, -ĭtis.*

X.

1. Nouns in X which have the genitive in *gis*, ſhorten the crement; as, *conjux, -ŭgis; remex, -ĭgis; Allobrox, -ŏgis; Phryx, Phrȳgis.* But *lex, lēgis*; and *rex, rēgis*, are long; and likewiſe *frŭgis.*

2. EX ſhortens *icis*; as, *vertex, -ĭcis*; except *vibex, -īcis.*

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the crement; as, *pax, pācis; radix, -īcis; vox, vōcis; lux, lūcis; Pollux, -ūcis, &c.*

Except *fălcis, nĕcis, vĭcis, prĕcis, calcis, cilicis, pĭcis, fornĭcis, nĭvis, Cappadŏcis, dūcis, nŭcis, crŭcis, trŭcis, onȳchis, Erȳcis, maſtȳx, -ȳchis*, the roſin of the *lentiſcus*, or maſtich-tree, and many others, whoſe quantity can only be aſcertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the crement; as, *Syphax, -ācis*, or *-ăcis; Sandȳx, -ȳcis*, or *-ĭcis; Bebryx, -ȳcis*, or *-ȳcis.*

Increaſe of the Plural Number.

9 Nouns of the plural number which increaſe, make *A, E*, and *O*, long; but ſhorten *I*, and *U*; as, *musārum, rērum, dominōrum; rēgĭbus, portŭbus:* except *bōbus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bŏvĭbus.*

INCREASE OF VERBS.

A verb is ſaid to increaſe, when any part has more ſyllables than the ſecond perſon ſingular of the preſent of the indicative active; as, *amas, amāmus*, where the ſecond ſyllable *ma* is the *increaſe* or *crement*; for the laſt ſyllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increaſes by ſeveral ſyllables; as, *amas, amābāmĭni*; in which caſe it is ſaid to have a *firſt, ſecond*, or *third increaſe.*

10. In the increaſe of verbs, *a, e*, and *o* are long; *i*, and *u*, ſhort; as,

Amāre, docēre, amātōte; legĭmus, sŭmus, volŭmus.

The poets ſometimes ſhorten *dăărunt* and *ſtĕtĕrunt*; and lengthen *rīmus* and *rītis*, in the future of the ſubjunctive; as, ——*tranſierītis aquas*, Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the formation of the verb.

The firſt or middle ſyllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are ſaid to be long or ſhort by *authority*; and their quantity can only be diſcovered from the uſage of the poets, which is the moſt certain of all rules.

REMARKS on the QUANTITY of the PENULT of WORDS.

1. Patronymics in IDES or ADES uſually ſhorten the penult; as, *Priamĭdes*, *Atlantĭădes*, &c. Unleſs they come from nouns in *eus*; as, *Pelīdes*, *Tydīdes*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and ſimilar words, in AIS, EIS, ITIS, OIS, OTIS, INE, and ONE, commonly lengthen the penult; as, Achāis, Ptolemāis, Chryſēis, Ænēis, Memphītis, Latōia, Icariōtis, Nerīne, Arifīōne. Except Thebăis, and Phocăis; and Nereis, which is common.

3. Adjectives in ACUS, ICUS, IDUS, and IMUS, for the moſt part ſhorten the penult; as, Ægyptiăcus, academĭcus, lepĭdus, legitĭmus; alſo ſuperlatives; as, fortiſſĭmus, &c. Except opācus, amīcus, aprīcus, pudīcus, mendīcus, poſtīcus, fīdus, inſīdus, (but perfĭdus, of per and fĭdes, is ſhort,) bīmus, quadrīmus, patrīmus, matrīmus, opīmus; and two ſuperlatives, īmus, primus.

4. Adjectives in ALIS, ANUS, ARUS, IVUS, ORUS, OSUS, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *aſſīvus*, *decōrus*, *arenōſus*. Except *barbărus*, *opipărus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in ILIS ſhorten the penult; as, *agĭlis*, *facĭlis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns uſually lengthen it; as, *anīlis*, *civīlis*, *berīlis*, &c. To theſe add, *exīlis*, *ſubtīlis*; and names of months, *Aprīlis*, *Quinctīlis*, *Sextīlis*: Except *humĭlis*, *parĭlis*; and alſo *ſimĭlis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are ſhort; as, versātĭlis, volatĭlis, umbratĭlis, &c.

6. Adjectives in INUS derived from inanimate things, as plants, ſtones, &c. alſo from adverbs of time, commonly ſhorten the penult; as, amaracĭnus, crocĭnus, cedrĭnus, fagĭnus, oleagĭnus; adamantĭnus, criſtallĭnus, craſtĭnus, priſtĭnus, perendĭnus, &c.

Other adjectives in INUS are long; as, *aquātnus*, *auſtrīnus*, *bīnus*, *clandeſtīnus*, *Latīnus*, *marīnus*, *ſupīnus*, *veſpertīnus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in OLUS, OLA, OLUM; and ULUS, ULA, ULUM, always ſhorten the penult; as, urceŏlus, filiŏla, muſæŏlum; lectŭlus, ratiuncŭla, corcŭlum, &c.

8. Adverbs in TIM lengthen the penult; as, oppidātim, viritim, tribūtim. Except affātim, perpĕtim, and ſtātim.

9. Deſideratives in URIO ſhorten the antepenultima, which in the ſecond and third perſon is the penult; as, eſŭrio, eſŭris, eſŭrit. But other verbs in urio, lengthen that ſyllable; as, ligūrio, ligūris; ſcatūrio, ſcatūris, &c.

PENULT of PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult. Abdēra, Abȳdus, Adōnis, Æsōpus, Ætōlus, Ahāla, Alarīcus, Alcīdes, Amȳclæ, Andronīcus, Anūbis, Archimēdes, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Ariſtīdes, Ariſtobūlus, Ariſtogīton, Arpīnum, Artabānus; Brachmānes, Busīris; Buthrōtus; Cēthēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes; Darīei, Demonīcus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioſcūri; Ebūdes, Eriphȳle, Eubūlus, Euclīdes, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Eurīpus, Euxīnus; Gargānus, Gætūlus, Granīcus; Heliogabūlus, Henrīcus, Heraclīdes, Heraclītus, Hippōnax, Hiſpānus; Irēne; Lacȳdas, Latōna, Leucāta; Lugdūnum, Lycōras; Mandāne, Mauſōlus, Maximīnus, Meleāger, Meſsāla, Meſsāna, Milētus; Nasīca, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pachȳnus, Pandōra, Pelōris, et -us, Pharsālus, Phœnīce, Pōlītes, Polyclētus, Polynīces, Priāpus; Sarpēdon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratonīce, Suffētes; Tigrānes, Theſſalonīca, Verōna, Veronīca.

The following are ſhort; Amăthus, Amphipŏlis, Anabăſis, Anticȳra, Antigŏnus, et -nē, Antilŏchus, Antiŏchus, Antiŏpa, Antĭpas, Antipăter, Antiphănes, Antiphătes, Antiphĭla, Antĭphon, Anȳtus, Apŭlus, Areopăgus, Arimĭnum, Armĕnus, Athĕſis, Attălus, Attĭca; Bitŭrix, Bructĕri; Calăber, Callicrătes, Calliſtrătus, Candăce, Cantăber, Carneădes, Cherĭlus, Chryſoſtŏmus, Cleombrŏtus, Cleomĕnes, Corȳcos, Conſtantinopŏlis, Cratĕrus, Cratȳlus, Creměra, Cruſtuměri, Cybĕle, Cyclădes, Cyzĭcus; Damŏcles, Dardănus, Dejŏces, Dejotărus, Democrĭtus, Demĭpho, Didȳmus, Diogĕnes, Drepănum, Dumnŏrix; Empedŏcles, Ephĕſus, Evergĕtes, Euměnes, Eurymĕdon, Euripȳlus; Fucīnus; Geryŏnes, Gyărus; Hecyra, Heliopŏlis, Hermiŏne, Herodŏtus, Heſiŏdus, Heſiŏne, Hippocrătes, Hippotămos, Hypăta, Hypănis; Icărus, Icĕtas, Illȳris, Iphĭtus, Iſmărus, Ithăca; Laodĭce, Laomĕdon, Lampsăcus, Lamȳrus, Lapĭthæ, Leucretĭlis, Lipăre, v. -a, Lyſimăchus, Longimănus; Marăthon, Mænălus, Marmarĭca, Maſſagĕtæ, Matrŏna, Megara, Melĭtus, et -ta, Metropŏlis, Mutĭna, Mycŏnus; Neŏcles, Neritos, Norĭcum; Omphale; Patara, Pegaſus, Pharnaces, Piſiſtratus, Polydamas, Polyx-

ĕna, Porsĕna, or Porsenna, Praxitĕles, Puteŏli, Pylades, Pythagŏras; Sarmătæ, Sarsĭna, Semĕle, Semirămis, Sequăni, et -a, Serĭphos, Sicŏris, Socrătes, Sodŏma, Sotădes, Spartăcus, Sporădes, Strongўle, Stymphălus, Sybăris; Taygĕtus, Telegŏnus, Telemăchus, Tenĕdos, Tarrăco, Theophănes, Theophĭlus, Tomўris; Urbĭcus; Venĕti, Vologĕsus, Volŭsus; Xenocrătes; Zoïlus. Zopўrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batăvi*, Lucan. *Bătăvi*, Juv. et Mart. *Fortuitus*, Horat. *Fortuĭtus*, Mart. Some make *fortuitus*, of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuĭtus*, Stat. *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *præstolor*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity there is no certain authority.

2. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

11. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short; as, *Musă templă*, *Tydeă*, *Lampădă*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long; as, *Musâ*, *Æneâ*; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*; as, *O Æneâ*, *O Pallâ*.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long; as, *Amā*, *frustrā*, *prætereā*, *ergā*, *intrā*.

Exc. Ită, quiă, ejă, posteă, pută, (adv.) and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions contră, ultră; and the compounds of ginta; as, trigintă, &c.

E.

12. *E* final is short; as,
Natĕ, sedilĕ, patrĕ, currĕ, nempĕ, antĕ.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long; as, mē, tē, sē: except these enclitic conjunctions, quĕ, vĕ, nĕ; and these syllabical adjections, ptĕ, cĕ, tĕ; as, suaptĕ, hujuscĕ, tutĕ.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long; as, Calliŏpē, Anchisē, fidē. *So* rē-, and diē, with their compounds, quarē, hodiē, pridiē, postridiē, quotidiē: Also Greek nouns which want the singular; Cetē, melē, Tempē; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation; as, Docē, manē; but cave, vale, and vide, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long; as, placidē, pulchrē, valdē, contracted for validē: To these add *fermē*, *ferē*, and *obē*; also all adverbs of the superlative degree; as, *doctissimē*, *fortissimē*: But *benĕ* and *malĕ* are short.

I.

13. *I* final is long; as, *Dominī*, *patrī*, *docerī*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short; as, Alexĭ, Amaryllĭ.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declenſion which increaſe, is common; as, *Pallădi, Minoĭdi.*

Mihi, tibi, ſibi, are alſo common: So likewiſe are *ibi, niſi, ubi, quaſi;* and *cui,* when a diſſyllable, which in poetry is ſeldom the caſe. *Sicubĭ* and *necubĭ* are always ſhort.

O.

14. *O* final is common; as, *Vergo, amo, quando.*

Exc. 1. Monoſyllables are long; as, *ō, dō, ſtō, prō:* The dative and ablative ſing. of the ſecond declenſion is long; as, *libro dominō:* Alſo Greek nouns; as, *Didō,* and *Athō* the genit. of *Athos:* and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō.* To theſe add *quō, eō,* and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō;* likewiſe *illō, idcircō, citrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō.*

Exc. 2. The following words are ſhort; *Egŏ, ſciŏ, cedŏ* a defective verb, *homŏ, citŏ, illicŏ, immŏ, duŏ, ambŏ, modŏ,* with its compounds, *quomodŏ, dummodŏ, poſtmodŏ:* but ſome of theſe are alſo found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in DO in Virgil is long; in other poets it is ſhort. *Ergō,* on account of, is long; *ergo,* therefore, is doubtful.

U and *Y.*

15. *U* final is long; *Y* final is ſhort; as, *Vultū: Molў.*

B, D, L, M, R, T.

16. *B, D, L, R,* and *T,* in the end of a word, are ſhort; as,

Ab, apŭd, ſemĕl, precŏr, capŭt.

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl; pār* and its compounds; *fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr;* alſo nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr,* likewiſe *aēr, æthēr:* to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Danĭēl, Davĭd.*

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel ſhort; as, *Militŭm ŏpto,* Ennius. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *milit' ŏpto;* except in compound words; as, *circŭmăgo, circŭmeo.*

C, N.

17. *C* and *N,* in the end of a word, are long; as,

Ac, īc, nōn. So Greek nouns in *n*; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamīn; Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn; Lacedæmōn*, &c.

The following words are ſhort, *nĕc* and *donĕc*; *forſităn, ĭn, forsăn, tamĕn, ăn, vidĕn*; likewiſe nouns in *en* which have *ĭnis* in the genitive; as, *carmĕn, crimĕn*; together with ſeveral Greek nouns; as, *Ilĭŏn, Pylŏn, Alexĭn.*

The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

18. *AS, ĒS*, and *OS*, in the end of a word, are long; as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs.*

The following words are ſhort, *anăs, ĕs*, from *ſum*, and *penĕs*; *ŏs* having *ŏſſis* in the genitive, *compŏs*, and *impŏs*; alſo a great many Greek nouns of all theſe three terminations; as, *Arcăs*, and *Arcădăs, herōăs, Phrygĕs, Arcadŏs, Tenĕdŏs, Mĕlos*, &c. and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increaſing ſhort; as, *Alĕs, hebĕs, obsĕs.* But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

19. *IS, US*, and *YS*, in the end of a word, are ſhort; as, *Turrĭs, legĭs, legĭmŭs, annŭs, Capўs.*

Exc. 1. Plural caſes in *is* and *us* are long; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnīs* for *omnes, fructūs, manūs*: alſo the genitive ſingular of the fourth declenſion; as, *portūs.* But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is ſhort; as, *floribŭs, fructibŭs, relĭquĭs.*

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *ītis, ītis*, or *entis*; as, *līs, Samnīs, Salamīs, Simōīs*; To theſe add the adverbs *gratīs* and *forīs*; the noun *glīs*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb; alſo *ris* in the ſecond perſon ſingular, when the plural has *ītis*; as, *audīs, abīs, poſſīs. Ris* in the future of the ſubjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monoſyllables in *us* are long; as, *grūs, sūs*: alſo nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, un-*

tis, or *ŏdis*; as, *tellūs*, *incūs*, *virtūs*, *amăthūs*, *tripūs*. To theſe add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declenſion; as, *Clīûs*, *Sapphûs*, *Mantûs*; alſo nouns which have *u* in the vocative; as, *Panthūs*.

Exc. 4. *Tethys* is ſometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewiſe *yn* in the nominative; as, *Phorcȳs*, *Trachȳs*.

The laſt ſyllable of every verſe is common: Or, as ſome think, neceſſarily long, on account of the pauſe or ſuſpenſion of the voice, which uſually follows it in pronunciation.

The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVE and COMPOUND words.

Derivatives.

20. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives; as,

Amicus, *from*	ămo.	Decŏro, *from*	decus, -ŏris.
Auctiōnor,	auctio, -ōnis.	Exŭlo,	exul, -ŭlis.
Auctōro,	auctor, -ōris.	Păvidus,	păveo.
Audītor,	audītum.	Quirīto,	Quiris, -ītis.
Auſpĭcor,	auſpex, -ĭcis.	Radīcītus,	radix, -īcis.
Caupōnor,	caupo, -ōnis.	Soſpīto,	ſoſpes, -ītis.
Compĕtītor,	compĕtītum.	Nātura,	nātus.
Cornīcor,	cornix, -īcis.	Māternus,	māter.
Cuſtōdio,	cuſtos, -ōdis.	Lĕgebam, &c.	lĕgo.
Devŏrsor,	decor, -ōris.	Lēgeram, &c.	lĕgi.

EXCEPTIONS.

1. *Long from ſhort.*

Dēni, *from*	dĕcem.	Suſpīcio, *from*	ſuſpĭcor.	Mōbĭlis, *from*	mŏveo.
Fōmes,	fŏveo.	Sēdes,	sĕdeo.	Hūmor,	hŭmus.
Hūmanus,	hŏmo.	Sēcius,	sĕcus.	Jūmentum,	jŭvo, &c.
Rēgula,	rĕgo.	Rēnuria,	pĕnus.		

2. *Short from long.*

Arena *and* ărĭſta, *from*	āreo.	Lŭcerna, *from*	lūceo.
Nŏta, *and* nŏto,	nōtus.	Dux, -ŭcis,	dūco.
Vădum,	vādo.	Stăbilis,	ſtābam.
Fĭdes,	fīdo.	Dĭtio,	dis, dītis.
Sŏpor,	sōpio.	Quăſillus,	quālus, &c.

Compounds.

21. Compounds follow the quantity of the ſimple words which compoſe them; as,

Dĕdūco, of *dĕ* and *dūco*. So, *prōfĕro*, *antĕfĕro*, *consōlor*, *dēnŭto*, *dēpecŭlor*, *deprāvo*, *deſpĕro*, *deſpŭmo*, *deſquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ērŭdio*, *exūdo*, *exăro*, *expăveo*, *incĕro*, *inhŭmo*, *investīgo*, *prægrăvo*, *prænăto*, *rĕgĕlo*, *appăro*, *appăreo*, *concăvus*, *prægrăvis*, *dēsōlo*, *ſuffŏco*, *diffĭdit* from *diffindo*, and *diffĭdit* from *diffīdo*, *indĭco* and *indīco*, *permănet* from *permăneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effŏdit* in the preſent, and *effōdit* in the perfect; ſo *exĕdit*, and *exēdit*; *devĕnit* and *devēnit*; *devĕnimus* and *devēnimus*; *reperīmus* and *reperĭmus*; *effŭgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; *as*, incīdo *from* in *and* cădo; incīdo, *from* in *and* cædo, ſuffōco, *from* ſub *and* faux, faucis. Unleſs the letter following make it fall under ſome general rule; *as*, ădmitto, pĕrcello, dĕoſculor, prŏhibeo.

Exc. 1. Agnĭtum, cognĭtum, dējĕro, pējĕro, innŭba, pronŭba, maledĭcus, veridĭcus, nihĭlum, ſemisŏpītus; *from* nōtus, jūro, nūbo, dīco, hīlum, *and* sōpio: *ambītus*, a participle from *ambio*, is long; but the ſubſtantives *ambĭtus* and *ambĭtio* are ſhort. *Connubium* has the ſecond ſyllable common.

Exc. 2. The prepoſition *PRO* is ſhort in the following words: prŏfundus, prŏfugio, prŏfŭgus, prŏnĕpos, prŏneptis, prŏfeſtus, prŏfari, prŏfiteor, prŏfānus, prŏfecto, prŏcella, prŏtervus, *and* prŏpāgo, *a lineage; pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-ſtock *or* ſhoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful: *propago*, to propagate; propīno, profundo, propello, propulſo, procūro, *and* Proſerpĭna.

Exc. 3. The inſeparable prepoſitions *SE* and *DI* are long; *as*, sēpăro, dīvello: *except* dĭrĭmo, dĭſertus. *Re*

is short; *as*, rĕmitto, rĕfĕro: except in the impersonal verb rĕfert, compounded of *res* and *fero*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, and *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; *as*, nĕfas, nĕque, patĕfacio, &c. omnĭpotens, agrĭcŏla, signĭfĭco, &c. dŭŏdĕcim, hŏdie, sacrŏsanctus, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; *as*, quīdam, quīvis, tantīdem, eīdem, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately; *as*, ludīmagister, lucrīfacio, sīquis, &c. *Idem* in the masc. is long, in the neuter short; *aĭso* ubīque, ibīdem. But in *ubivis*, and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

ACCENT.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphăsis*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked [´]; as, *prŏfero*, prŏfer.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone; and is thus marked [`]; as, *doctè*. This accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [^]; as, *amâre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction; as in these adverbs, *aliquò*, *continuò*, *doctè*, *unà*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poëtâ*, *gloriâ*, in the ablative: *fructûs*, *tumultûs*, in the genitive: *nostrûm*, *vestrûm*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos*: *ergô*, on account of: *occîdit*, he slew; *Pompĭlî*, for *Pompilii*; *amâris*, for *amaveris*, &c.

VERSE.

A VERSE is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure, than to regulate its pronunciation.

FEET.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cæsūra*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. *Feet of two syllables.*

Spondēus,	consists of two long; as, *ōmnēs*.
Pyrrhichius,	two short; as, *dĕŭs*.
Iambus,	a short and a long; as, *ămâns*.
Trochæus,	a long and a short; as, *sērvŭs*.

2. *Feet of three syllables.*

Dactylus,	a long and two short; as, *scrībĕrĕ*.
Anapæstus,	two short and a long; as, *pĭĕtās*.
Amphimăcer,	a long, a short, and a long; as, *chārĭtās*.
Tribrăchys,	three short; as, *dŏmĭnŭs*.

The following are not so much used.

Molossus,	dēlēctānt.	*Dispondeus*,	ōrātōrēs.
Amphibrachys,	hŏnōrĕ.	*Dijambus*,	ămœnĭtās.
Bacchius,	dŏlōrēs.	*Choriambus*,	pōntĭfĭcēs.
Antibacchius,	pēllūntŭr.	*Ditrochæus*,	cāntĭlēnă.
		Antispastus,	ălēxāndĕr.
		Ionicus minor,	prŏpĕrābānt.
		Ionicus major,	cālcārĭbŭs.

3. *Feet of four syllables.*

Proceleusmaticus,	hŏmĭnĭbŭs.

Pæon primus,	tĕmpŏrĭbŭs.	*Epitritus primus,*	vŏlŭptātēs.
Pæon secundus,	pŏtēntĭă.	*Epitritus secundus,*	pœnĭtentēs.
Pæon tertius,	ănĭmātŭs.	*Epitritus tertius,*	dĭscōrdĭās.
Pæon quartus,	cĕlĕrĭtās.	*Epitritus quartus,*	fōrtūnātŭs.

SCANNING.

The meaſuring of verſe, or the reſolving of it into the ſeveral feet of which it is compoſed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verſe has juſt the number of feet requiſite, it is called *Verſus Acatalectus*, or *Acatalectĭcus*, an Acatalectic verſe: If a ſyllable be wanting, it is called *Catalectĭcus*; If there be a ſyllable too much, *Hypercatalectĭcus*, or *Hypermĕter*.

The aſcertaining whether the verſe be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depoſitio* or *Clauſula*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

1. HEXAMETER.

The Hexaměter or heroic verſe conſiſts of ſix feet. Of theſe the fifth is a dactyle, and the ſixth a ſpondee; all the reſt may be either dactyles or ſpondees; as,

Lūdĕrĕ | quæ vĕl- | lēm călă | mō pĕr | mīsĭt ă- | grēſtī. Virg.
Infăn- | dūm, Rĕ- | gīnă, jŭ- | bēs rĕnŏ- | vārĕ dŏ- | lōrēm. Id.

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than ſeventeen ſyllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a ſpondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verſe is called *Spondaic*; as,

Cāră Dĕ- | ūm sŏbŏ- | lēs mā- | gnūm Jŏvĭs | īncrē- | mēntūm. Virg.

This verſe is uſed, when any thing grave, ſlow, large, ſad, or the like is expreſſed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four ſyllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a ſuperfluous ſyllable at the end. But this ſyllable muſt either terminate in a vowel, or in the conſonant *m*, with a vowel before it; ſo as to be joined with the following verſe, which in the preſent caſe muſt always begin with a vowel; as,

Omnĭă | Mĕrcŭrĭ- | ō sĭmĭ- | līs vō- | cēmquĕ cŏ- | lōrēmquĕ
Et flavos crines———

Thoſe Hexameter verſes ſound beſt, which have dactyles and ſpondees alternately; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permiſit agreſti. Virg.
Pinguis et ingratæ premeretur caſeus urbi. Id.

Or which have more dactyles than ſpondees; as,

Tityre tu patulæ recubans ſub tegmine fagi

It is eſteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verſe, when by the uſe of dactyles and ſpondees, the ſound is adapted to the ſenſe; as,

Quadrupedante putrem ſonitu quatit ungula campum. Virg.
Illi inter ſeſe magna vi brachia tollunt. Id.
Monſtrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.
Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, rimiſque fatiſcunt. Id.

But what deſerves particular attention in ſcanning Hexameter verſe is the CÆSURA.

Cæſura is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a ſyllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot; as,

At rĕ-gĭnă grā-vī jām-dudum, &c.

The *Cæſura* is variouſly named, according to the different parts of the hexameter verſe in which it is found. When it comes after the firſt foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Trieimĕris*: When on the fifth half-foot, or the ſyllable after the ſecond foot, it is called *Penthemimĕris*: When it happens on the firſt ſyllable of the fourth foot, or the ſeventh half-foot, it is called *Hephthemimĕris*; and when on the ninth half-foot, or the firſt ſyllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennēmimĕris*.

All theſe different ſpecies of the *Cæſura* ſometimes occur in the ſame verſe; as,

Illĕ lă-tūs nĭvĕ-ūm mōl-lī fŭl-tŭs bўă-cīnthō. Virg.

But the moſt common and beautiful *Cæſura* is the penthemim; on which ſome lay a particular accent or ſtreſs of the voice in reading an hexameter verſe thus compoſed, whence they call it the *Cæſural pauſe*; as,

Tityre dum rede-O, brevis eſt via, paſce capellas. Virg.

When the *Cæſura* falls on a ſyllable naturally ſhort, it renders it long; as the laſt ſyllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verſe in a great meaſure depends on the proper diſpoſition of the *Cæſura*. Without this a line conſiſting of the number of feet requiſite will be little elſe than mere proſe; as,

Rōmæ mænĭă tērrŭit ĭmpĭgĕr Hănnĭbăl ārmīs. Ennius.

The ancient Romans in pronouncing verſe paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only obſerved the quantity and accent of the ſeveral ſyllables, but alſo the different ſtops and pauſes which the particular turn of the verſe required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verſe, becauſe we have now loſt the juſt pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner ſimilar to their own. In reading Latin verſe, therefore, we are directed by the ſame rules which take place with reſpect to Engliſh verſe.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the ſenſe. All the words ſhould be pronounced fully; and the cadence of

the verſe ought only to be obſerved, ſo far as it correſponds with the natural expreſſion of the words. At the end of each line there ſhould be no fall of the voice, unleſs the ſenſe requires it; but a ſmall pauſe, half of that which we uſually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentaměter verſe conſiſts of five feet. Of theſe the two firſt are either dactyles or ſpondees; the third always a ſpondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapæſtus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquĭ- | tūr sē- | mĭnă quĭſ- | quĕ sūæ. *Propert.*
Cārmĭnĭ- | bŭs vĭ- | vēs tĕm- | pŭs ĭn ōm- | nĕ mĕĭs. *Ovid.*

But this verſe is more properly divided into two hemiſticks or halves; the former of which conſiſts of two feet, either dactyles or ſpondees, and a Cæſura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another Cæſura: thus,

Nātū- | ræ sĕquĭ- | tūr | sĕmĭnă | quiſquĕ sŭ- | æ.
Cārmĭnĭ- | bŭs vĭ- | vēs | tĕmpŭs ĭn | ōmnĕ mĕ- | ĭs.

The Pentameter uſually ends with a diſſyllable, but ſometimes alſo with a polyſyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Aſclepiadēan verſe conſiſts of four feet; namely, a ſpondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæcē- | nās ătăvīs | ēdĭtĕ rē- | gibŭs. Hor.

But this verſe may be more properly meaſured thus: In the firſt place, a ſpondee; in the ſecond, a dactyle; then a cæſura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæce- | nas ata- | vis | edite | regibus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verſe has three feet, a ſpondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius; as,

Nāvĭs | quæ tĭbĭ crē- | dĭtŭm. Hor.

Or it may be divided into a ſpondee and two dactyles; thus,

Navis | quæ | tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verſe has five feet, viz. a trochee, ſpondee, dactyle, and two trochees; thus,

Intĕ- | gēr vī- | tæ, ſcĕlĕ- | rīſquĕ | pūrŭs. Hor.

An Adonian verſe conſiſts only of a dactyle and ſpondee; as,

Jūpĭtĕr | ūrget. Hor.

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verſe conſiſts of three feet, a ſpondee, dactyle, and ſpondee; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquŏră | vēntīs. Hor.

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verſe conſiſts of five feet, namely, a ſpondee, a dactyle, and three trochees; as,

Sūmmās | nēc mĕtŭ- | ās dī- | ēm, nĕc | ōptĕs. Mart.

8. The GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcaic, called likewiſe *Dactylic*, conſiſts of four feet, a ſpondee or iambus, iambus and cæſura, then two dactyles; as,

Vīrtūs | rĕpŭl- | ſæ | nĕſcĭă | sōrdĭdæ. Hor.

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verſe conſiſts of four feet. In the firſt and third place, it has either a ſpondee or iambus; in the ſecond and fourth, always an iambus; and in the end, a Cæſura; as,

Nēc sā- | mĭt, sŭt | pōnĭt | sĕcū- | rēs. Hor.

10. The LESSER ALCAIC.

The leſſer Dactylic Alcaic conſiſts of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbĭtrĭ- | ŏ pŏpŭ- | lārĭs | aūræ. Hor.

Of the above kinds of verſe, the firſt two take their names from the number of feet of which they conſiſt. All the reſt derive their names from thoſe by whom they were either firſt invented, or frequently uſed.

There are ſeveral other kinds of verſe, which are named from the feet by which they are moſt commonly meaſured; ſuch as the dactylic, trochaic, anapæſtic, and iambic. The laſt of theſe is moſt frequently uſed.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verſe there are two kinds. The one conſiſts of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimĕter*; the other conſiſts of ſix feet, and is called *Trimĕter*. The reaſon of theſe names is, that among the Greeks two feet were conſidered only as one meaſure in iambic verſe; whereas the Latins meaſured it by ſingle feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *ſenarius*.

Originally this kind of verſe was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Inār- | sĭt æ- | ſtŭō | sĭūs. Hor.

Trimeter, Sŭīs | ĕt ī- | psă Rō- | mă vī- | rĭbūs | rŭit. Id.

But afterwards, both for the ſake of eaſe and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the firſt, third, and fifth places, inſtead of an iambus, they uſed a ſpondee, a dactyle, or an anapæſtus, and ſometimes a tribrachys. We alſo find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the ſecond place, and in the fourth; for the laſt foot muſt always be an iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Cānĭdĭ- | ă trā- | ctāvīt | dăpēs. Hor.
Vīdē- | rĕ prŏpĕ- | rāntēs | dŏmūm. Id.

Trimeter, Quōquō | scĕlĕ- | ſtī rŭī- | tĭs aŭt | cūr dĕx- | tĕrīs. Id.
Păvĭdūm- | quĕ lĕpŏ- | r' aūt ād | vĕnām | lăquĕō | grŭĕm. Id.
Alĭtĭ- | bŭs ăt- | quĕ cănĭ- | bŭs hŏmĭ- | cīd' Hē- | ctŏrēm.

In comic writers we ſometimes find an iambic verſe conſiſting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter*, or *Octonarius*.

FIGURES in SCANNING.

The ſeveral changes made upon words to adapt them to the verſe, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of theſe are the *Synalœpha*, *Ecthlipſis*, *Synærĕſis*, *Diærĕſis*; *Syſtŏle*, and *Diaſtŏle*.

1. SYNALOEPHA is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. Virg.

to be ſcanned thus,

Cōntĭcŭ- | ēr' ōm- | nēs īn- | tēntĭ- | qu' ōră tĕ- | nēbānt.

The *Synalœpha* is ſometimes neglected; and ſeldom takes place in the interjections, *ô*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, *hei*; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divûmque æterna poteſtas. Virg.

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are ſometimes ſhortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio *in* magno, quas dira Celæno. Virg.
Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. Id.
Victor apud rapidum Simoënta sub Ilio alto.
Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.
Glauco et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. ECTHLIPSIS is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it, in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane? Pers.

thus,

O cū- | rās hŏmĭ- | n', ō quān- | t' ēst ĭn | rēbŭs ĭn- | ānē.

Sometimes the Synalœpha and Ecthlipsis are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque
Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. Virg.
Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum
Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. Id.

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. SYNÆRESIS is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crasis*; as, *Phæthon*, for *Phaethon*. So *ëi* in *Thesei*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei*; *üi* in *huic*, *cui*; *öi* in *proinde*; *ëâ* in *aureâ*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria Thesei. Ovid.
Proinde tona eloquio, solitum tibi. Virg.
Filius huic contrâ, torquet qui sidera mundi. Id.
Aureâ percussum virgâ, versumque venenis. Id.

So in *antehac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deerit*, *vehemens*, *gnescit*, *eodem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semihomo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. as,

Unâ eâdemque viâ sanguisque animusque ferunter. Virg.
Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. Id.
Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. Hor.
Divitis uber agri, Troiæque opulentia deerit. Virg.
Vehemens et liquidus puroque similimus amni. Hor.

Te ſemper anteit dira neceſſitas. Alcaic. Hor.
Uno eodemque igni, ſic noſtro Daphnis amore. Virg.
Cum refluit campis, & jam ſe condidit alveo. Id.
Inde ubi venêre ad fauces graveolentis Averni. Id.
Bis patriæ cecidere manus: quin protinus omnia. Id.
Cædit ſemianimis Rutulorum calcibus arva. Id.
Semihominis Caci facies quam dira tenebat. Id.
Fluviorum rex Eridanus, campoſque per omnes. Id.
Magnanimoſque duces, totiuſque ex ordine gentis. Id.
Inde legit Capreas, promontoriumque Minervæ. Ovid.

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the ſame ſyllable with the following vowel; *as in* genva, tenvis; arjetat, tenvia, abjete, pitvita; parjetibus, Naſidjenus; *for* genua, tenuis, *&c.* as,

Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque tenvis. Lucr.
Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore ſanguis. Virg.
Arjetat in portas & duros objice poſtes. Id.
Velleraque ut foliis depectant tenvia Seres. Id.
Ædificant, ſectâque intexunt abjete coſtas. Id.
Præcipuè ſanus, niſi cum pitvita moleſta eſt. Hor.
Parjetibuſque premunt arctis, & quatuor addunt. Virg.
Ut Naſidjeni juvit te cœna beati. Hor.

4. DIÆRESIS divides one ſyllable into two; as, aulăi, *for* aulæ; Trŏiæ, *for* Trojæ; Perſĕus, *for* Perſeus; milĕus, *for* milvus; ſolŭit, *for* ſolvit; volŭit, *for* volvit; aqŭæ, sŭetus, sŭaſit, Sŭevos, relangŭit, reliqŭas, *for* aquæ, ſuetus, *&c.* as,

Aula in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. Virg.
Stamina non ulli diſſoluenda Deo. Pentam. Tibullus.
Debuerant ſuſos evolŭiſſe ſuos. Id. Ovid.
Quæ calidum faciunt aqŭæ tactum atque vaporem. Lucr.
Cum mihi non tantum fureſque feræque sŭetæ. Hor.
Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque sŭadent. Lucr.
Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Sŭevos. Lucan.
Impoſito fratri moribunda relangŭit ore. Ovid.
Reliqŭas tamen eſſe vias in mente patenteis. Lucr.

5. SYSTŎLE is when a long ſyllable is made ſhort; as the penult in *tulerunt*; thus,

Matri longa decem tulĕrunt faſtidia menſes. Virg.

6. DIASTŎLE is when a ſyllable uſually ſhort is made long; as the laſt ſyllable in *amor*, in the following verſe:

Conſidant, ſi tantus amōr, et mœnia condant.

To theſe may be ſubjoined the *Figures of Diction*, as they are called, which are chiefly uſed by the poets, tho' ſome of them likewiſe frequently occur in proſe.

1. When a letter or ſyllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called PROSTHESIS: as, *gnavus*, for *navus*; *tetŭli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or ſyllable is interpoſed in the middle of a word, it is called EPENTHESIS; as, *relligio*, for *religio*; *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or ſyllable is added to the end, it is called PARAGŌGE; as, *dicier*, for *dici*.

2. If a letter or ſyllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called APHÆRESIS; as, *natus*, for *gnatus*; *tenderant*, for *tetenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called SYNCŎPE; as, *dixti*, for *dixiſti*; *deûm*, for *deorum*. If from the end, APOCŎPE; as, *viden'*, for *videſne*; *Antōnî*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or ſyllable is tranſpoſed, it is called METATHESIS; as, *piſtris*, for *priſtis*; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called ANTITHESIS; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum*; *olli*, for *illi*; *voltis*, for *vultis*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF POEMS.

Any work compoſed in verſe is called a *Poem*, (*Poema* or *Carmen*)

Poems are called by various names, from their ſubject, their form, the manner of treating the ſubject, and their ſtyle.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an EPITHALAMIUM; on a mournful ſubject, an ELEGY or LAMENTATION; in praiſe of the ſupreme Being, a HYMN; in praiſe of any perſon or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE; a poem to be inſcribed on a tomb, an EPITAPH, &c.

2. A ſhort poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE, whence ſuch compoſitions are called *Lyric Poems:* A poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE; a ſhort witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits, which ariſe from any ſubject, is called an EPIGRAM; as thoſe of Catullus and Martial. A ſharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its *Point.* A poem expreſſing the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obſcure queſtion to be explained, is called an ÆNIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is deſcribed ſo that the firſt letters of each verſe, and ſometimes the middle and final letters, expreſs the name of the perſon or thing deſcribed, it is called an ACROSTIC; as the following on our Saviour;

I nter cuncta micans *I* gniti ſidera cœli *I*,
E xpellit tenebras *E* toto Phœbus ut orbe *E*;
S ic cœcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra *S*,
V ivificanſque ſimul *V* ero præcordia mot *V*,
S olem juſtitiæ *S* eſe probat eſſe beati *S*.

3. From the manner of treating a ſubject, a poem is either *Exegetic, Dramatic,* or *Mixt.*

The *Exegetic,* where the poet always ſpeaks himſelf, is of three kinds, Hiſtorical, Didactic or Inſtructive, (as the Satire or Epiſtle;) and Deſcriptive.

Of the *Dramatic,* the chief kinds are COMEDY, repreſenting the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy iſſue; and TRAGEDY, repreſenting the actions and diſtreſſes of illuſtrious perſonages, commonly with an unhappy iſſue. To which may be added *Paſtoral Poems* or BUCOLICS, repreſenting the actions and converſations of ſhepherds; as moſt of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet ſometimes ſpeaks in his own perſon, and ſometimes makes other characters to ſpeak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of ſome one great tranſaction of ſome great illuſtrious perſon, with its various circumſtances; as, the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the ſettlement of Æneas in Italy in the *Æneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradiſe Loſt* of Milton, &c.

4. The ſtyle of poetry, as of proſe, is of three kinds, the ſimple, ornate, and ſublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verſe uſed. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satyres and Epiſtles, Ovid in his Metamorphōſis, Lucan, Silius Italicus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always uſe Hexameter verſe: Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally uſe the Iambic, and ſometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in ſhorter poems, particularly thoſe which are called Lyric poems, as the Odes of Horace and the Pſalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verſe are combined.

A Poem which has only one kind of verſe, is called by a Greek name, MONOCŌLON, ſc. *poema* v. *carmen*; or MONOCŌLOS, ſc. *ode*: that which has two kinds, DICŌLON; and that which has three kinds of verſe, TRICŌLON.

If the ſame ſort of verſe return after the ſecond line, it is called DICOLON DISTRŌPHON; as when a ſingle Pentameter is alternately placed after an Hexameter, which is named *Elegiac verſe* (carmen Elegiacum,) becauſe it was firſt applied to mournful ſubjects; thus,

Flebilis indignos, Elegīa, ſolve capillos;
Ah! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit. Ovid.

This kind of verſe is uſed by Ovid in all his other works except the Metamorphoſes; and alſo for the moſt part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem conſiſts of two kinds of verſe, and after three lines returns to the firſt, it is called *Dicolon Tristrōphon*; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetraſtrōphon*; as,

Auream quiſquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obſoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendā
Sobrius aulā. Horat.

When a poem conſiſts of three kinds of verſe, and after three lines always returns to the firſt, it is called *Tri-*

colon Triſtrophon; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetraſtrophon*; as when after two greater dactylic alcaic verſes are ſubjoined an archilochian iambic and a leſſer dactylic alcaic, which is named the *Carmen Horatianum*, or Horatian verſe, becauſe frequently uſed by Horace; thus,

> Virtus recludens immeritis mori
> Cœlum, negatâ tentat iter viâ;
> Cœtuſque vulgares, et udam
> Spernit humum fugiente pennâ.

Any one of theſe parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verſe are comprehended, when taken by itſelf, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

Different kinds of Verse in Horace and Buchanan.

I. Odes and Psalms of one kind of Verſe.

1. *Aſclepiadean*, See N° 3, page 272. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8. III. 30——Buch. Pſ. 28, 40, 80.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, conſiſting of a ſpondee, three choriambuſes, and a pyrrychius or iambus: Hor. I. 11. 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic trimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 17.——Buch. Pſ. 25, 94, 106.

4. *Hexameter*, N° 1. Hor. Satyres and Epiſtles.——Buch. Pſ. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.

5. *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 12.—Buch. Pſ. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 148, 149, 150.

6. The *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8.—Buch. Pſ. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.

7. *Trochaic*, conſiſting of ſeven trochees and a ſyllable; admitting alſo a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the firſt, third, fifth, and ſeventh foot; and in the even places, a tribrachys, ſpondee, dactyle, and anapeſtus,—Buch. Pſ. 105, 119, 124, 129.

8. *Anapeſtic*, conſiſting of four anapeſtuſes, admitting alſo a ſpondee or dactyle; and in the laſt place, ſometimes a tribrachys, amphimacer, or trochee.—Pſ. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses, and a syllable; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.—Pf. 131.

II. Odes and Psalms of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadean*, N° 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3, 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.——Buch. Pf. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every first line *(Dactylico-Trochaic,)* consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last; every second verse *(Iambic Archilochian)* consisting of an iambus or spondæus, an iambus, a cæsura, and then three trochees. Hor. I. 4.

3. The first line, *Hexameter*, and the second, *Alcmanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7, 28. Epod. 12.——Buch. Pf. 4, 111.

4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer: Every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. I. 8.

5. The first line, *(Trochaic,)* consisting of three trochees and a cæsura; or of an amphimacer and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. Hor. II. 18.

6. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second *(Dactylic Archilochian,)* two dactyles and cæsura. Hor. IV. 7.——Buch. Pf. 12.

7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter*; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.——Buch. Pf. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.

8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter*; the second *(Sapphic,)* consists of two dactyles, a cæsura, and four iambuses, ad-

mitting alſo a ſpondeus, &c. But this verſe is commonly divided into two parts; the firſt, the latter part of a pentameter, N° 2. and the ſecond, iambic dimeter, N° 11. Hor. Epod. 11.

9. The firſt line, *Hexameter*; the ſecond, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15. Buch. Pſ. 81.

10. *Hexameter*, and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Pſ. 2, 20, 24, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.

11. The firſt line, *Sapphic*, N° 5. and the ſecond *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Pſ. 8.

12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Pſ. 33, 70, 121, 142.

13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Pſ. 36, 63.

14. The firſt line, *Hexameter*; and the ſecond line, the three laſt feet of an hexameter, with a long ſyllable or two ſhort ſyllables before. Buch. Pſ. 68.

15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac* verſe. Buch. Pſ. 88, 114, 137.

16. The firſt line, *(Trochaic,)* three trochees and a ſyllable, admitting ſometimes a ſpondee, tribrachys, &c. The ſecond line, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Pſ. 100.

III. Odes and Psalms of two kinds of verſe, and three or four lines in each ſtanza.

1. The three firſt lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth, *Adonian*, N° 5. Hor. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11. *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Pſ. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 90, 101, 103.

2. The three firſt lines, *Aſclepiadean*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 12. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12. Buch. Pſ. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two firſt lines, *Ionic trimeter*, conſiſting of three Ionici minores; the third line, *Ionic tetrameter*, having one Ionicus minor more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two firſt lines have four trochees, admitting, in the ſecond foot, a ſpondee, dactyle, &c. The third line, the ſame; only wanting a ſyllable at the end. Buch. Pſ. 66.

5. The three firſt lines, *Glyconian*, N° 4. admitting alſo a ſpondee or iambus in the firſt foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. Buch. Pſ. 116, 122, 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verſe, and three or four lines in each ſtanza.

1. The two firſt lines, *Aſclepiadēan*, N° 3. the third line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. and the fourth, *Glyconian*, N° 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23. III. 7, 13. IV. 13.—Buch. Pſ. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The firſt two lines, *the Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. The fourth, *the Leſſer Alcaic*, N° 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15. Buch. Pſ. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The firſt line, *Glyconian*; the ſecond, *Aſclepiadēan*; the third a ſpondee, three choriambuſes, and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Pſ. 16.

4. The firſt line, *Hexameter*; the ſecond, *Iambic dimeter*; and the third, two dactyles and a ſyllable; Hor. Epod. 13. Buch. Pſ. 138. Sometimes the two laſt verſes are joined in one, or inverted; as, Buch. Pſ. 145.

ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of ſyllables in Engliſh Verſe is not preciſely aſcertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monoſyllables are generally either long or ſhort, as occaſion requires. And in words of two or more ſyllables, the accented ſyllable is always long.

Of Engliſh verſe there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verſe*.

In rhyme the lines are uſually connected two and two, ſometimes three and three in the final ſyllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verſe ſimilarity of ſound in the final ſyllables is carefully avoided.

In meaſuring moſt kinds of Engliſh verſe, we find long and ſhort ſyllables ſucceeding one another alternately; and therefore the accents ſhould reſt on every ſecond ſyllable.

The feet by which Engliſh verſe is commonly meaſured, are either *Iambic*, i. e. conſiſting of a ſhort and a long ſyllable; as, *ălōft, crĕāte*; or *Trochaic*, i. e. conſiſting of a long and a ſhort ſyllable; as, *hōly, lōftў*. In verſes of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even ſyllables; in the latter, on the odd ſyllables. But the meaſure of a verſe in Engliſh is moſt frequently determined by its number of ſyllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

I. IAMBIC MEASURE compriſes verſes,

1. Of *four ſyllables*, or of *two feet*; as,

With raviſh'd ears,
The monarch hears. *Dryden.*

2. Of *ſix ſyllables*, or of *three feet*; as,

Aloft in awful ſtate,
The godlike hero ſat. *Dryden.*

3. Of *eight ſyllables*, or of *four feet*; as,

While dangers hourly round us riſe,
No caution guards us from ſurpriſe. *Fran. Horace.*

4. Of *ten ſyllables*, or of *five feet*, which is the common meaſure of heroic and tragic poetry; as,

Poetic fields encompaſs me around,
And ſtill I ſeem to tread on Claſſic ground;
For here the muſe ſo oft her harp has ſtrung,
That not a mountain rears its head unſung. *Addiſon.*

Obſ. 1. In meaſures of this laſt ſort, we ſometimes find the laſt line of a couplet or triplet ſtretched out to twelve ſyllables, or ſix feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verſe; thus,

A needleſs Alexandrine ends the ſong,
Which, like a wounded ſnake, drags its ſlow length along. *Pope.*

Waller was ſmooth; but Dryden taught to join
The varying verſe, the full reſounding line,
The long majeſtic march, and energy divine. *Pope.*

We alſo find the laſt verſe of a triplet ſtretched out to fourteen ſyllables, or ſeven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verſe before it; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is dreſt;
For thee the ocean ſmiles, and ſmooths her wavy breaſt,
And heaven itſelf with more ſerene and purer light is bleſt. *Dryd.*

Sometimes alſo when there is no Alexandrine before it; thus,

At length by fate to power divine reſtor'd,
His thunder taught the world to know its lord,
The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. *Rowe.*

Obſ. 2. The more ſtrictly iambic theſe verſes are, the more harmonious. In ſeveral of them, however, particularly in thoſe of ten ſyllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewiſe a ſpondee, inſtead of an iambus. Verſes of heroic meaſure ſometimes alſo admit a dactyle, or an anapeſtus, in place of the iambus; in which caſe a verſe of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen ſyllables; thus,

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14
And many an humorous, many an amorous lay
1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12
Was ſung by many a Bard on many a day.

This manner of writing every ſyllable fully is now generally uſed by the beſt poets, and ſeems much more proper than the ancient cuſtom of cutting off vowels by

an apoſtrophe. Our language abounds too much in conſonants of itſelf: the eliſion of vowels therefore ſhould be avoided as much as poſſible, and ought only to be admitted where it is abſolutely neceſſary; as, *o'er*, for *over*; *e'er*, for *ever*, &c. The ſame obſervation may be applied to every kind of meaſure.

II. TROCHAIC MEASURE compriſes verſes,

1. Of *three ſyllables*; as,

Dreadful gleams,
Diſmal ſcreams, *&c.* *Pope.*

2. Of *five ſyllables*; as,

In the days of old,
Stories plainly told,
Lovers felt annoy.

3. Of *ſeven ſyllables*; as,

Faireſt piece of well form'd earth,
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

Theſe are the meaſures which are moſt commonly uſed in Engliſh poetry, eſpecially thoſe of ſeven, eight, and ten ſyllables.

We have another meaſure very quick and lively, and therefore much uſed in ſongs, which may be called *Anapeſtic* meaſure, i. e. a verſe conſiſting of feet of three ſyllables, two ſhort, and one long, in which the accent reſts upon every third ſyllable. Verſes of anapeſtic meaſure conſiſt of two, three, or four feet; that is, of ſix, nine, or twelve ſyllables; thus,

Let the lóud trumpets sóund,
Till the róofs all aróund,
The ſhrill échoes rebóund. *Pope.*

From the pláins, from the wóodlands, and gróves,
How the níghtingales wárble their lóves! *Shenſtone.*

May I góvern my páſſions with ábſolute ſwáy,
And grow wíſer and bétter, as life wears awáy.

In this meaſure, a ſyllable is often retrenched from the firſt foot; as,

The ſwórd or the dárt
Shall píerce my ſad héart. *Addiſon.*

Ye ſhépherds ſo chéerful and gáy,
Whoſe flócks never cárelefsly róam, *&c.*

I vów'd to the múſes my time and my cáre,
Since néither could wín me the ſmíles of the fáir. *Shenſtone.*

Theſe meaſures are variouſly combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in ſhort poems; for generally in longer works the ſame meaſure is always obſerved.

Stanzas are compoſed of more or fewer verſes, and theſe variouſly diverſified, according to the nature of the ſubject, and the taſte of the poet. But when they are ſtretched out to a great length, and conſiſt of verſes of many different meaſures, they are ſeldom agreeable.

Such poems as conſiſt of ſtanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verſes, nor the verſes to a certain number of ſyllables, nor the rhymes to a certain diſtance, are called *Irregular*, or *Pindaric odes*. Of this kind are ſeveral of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the ſtrophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the moſt frequent, in which the firſt verſe anſwers to the third, and the third to the fourth. There is a ſtanza of this kind, conſiſting of verſes of eight and of ſix ſyllables alternately, which is very often uſed, particularly in ſacred poetry. Here for the moſt part the ſecond and fourth lines only rhyme together; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,
My riſing ſoul ſurveys;
Tranſported with the view, I'm loſt
In wonder, love, and praiſe. *Addiſon.*

Sometimes alſo the firſt and third lines anſwer to one another; as,

Keep ſilence, all created things,
And wait your Maker's nod:
The muſe ſtands trembling while ſhe ſings
The honours of her God. *Watts.*

This ſtanza is uſed in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verſes, each conſiſting of fourteen ſyllables, having a pauſe after the eighth ſyllable.

Several of theſe meaſures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional ſhort ſyllable at the end of the verſe; as,

1. *In heroic meaſure, or verſes of ten ſyllables, both in blank verſe and rhyme.*

In Blank Verſe.

'Tis heaven itſelf that points out an hereafter. *Addiſon.*

In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.

The piece, you think, is incorrect? Why take it,
I'm all ſubmiſſion; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In verſes of eight ſyllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verſes of ſix ſyllables.*

'Twas when the ſeas were roaring,
With hollow blaſts of wind,
A damſel lay deploring
All on a rock reclined. *Gay.*

4. *In verſes of ſeven ſyllables.*

As Palemon, unſuſpecting,
Prais'd the ſly muſician's art;
Love, his light diſguiſe rejecting,
Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Shenſtone.*

5. *In verſes of three ſyllables.*

Glooms inviting,
Birds delighting. *Addiſon.*

6. *In the Anapeſtic meaſure.*

Ah! friend, 'tis but idle to make ſuch a pother,
Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Shenſtone.*

Now with furies ſurrounded,
Deſpairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double Rhyme is uſed chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burleſque compoſitions.

Verſes with double endings, in blank verſe, moſt frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect; thus,

I here devote thee for my prince and country;
Let them be ſafe, and let me nobly periſh. *Thompſon.*

The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,
Darkneſs incloſ'd, and the winds whiſtled round me. *Otway.*

APPENDIX,

Of *Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters,* and the *Diviſion* of the *Roman Month.*

Capitals, or large letters, are uſed at the beginning of ſentences, of verſes, and of proper names. Some uſe them at the beginning of every ſubſtantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of ſpeech, unleſs they be emphatical, commonly begin with a ſmall letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quinctius*, T. *Titus*. So F. ſtands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos*; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conſcripti*; S. C. *Senatus Conſultum*; P. R. *Populus Romanus*; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populuſque Romanus*; U. C. *Urbs Condita*; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit*; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat*; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, conſecratque*; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Seſtertius*, equal in value to two pounds of braſs and a half; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra, Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books, A. D. marks *Anno Domini*; A. M. *Artium Magiſter*, Maſter of arts; M. D. *Medicinæ Doctor*; LL. D. *Legum Doctor*; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a ſmall letter or two is added to the capital; as, Etc. *Et cætera*; Ap. *Appius*; Cn. *Cneius*; Op. *Opiter*; Sp. *Spurius*; Ti. *Tiberius*; Sex. *Sextius*; Cos. *Conſul*; Coſs. *Conſules*; Imp. *Imperator*; Impp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in Engliſh, Eſq. *Eſquire*; Dr. *Debtor* or *Doctor*; Acct. *Account*; MS. *Manuſcript*; MSS. *Manuſcripts*; Do. *Ditto*; Rt. Hon. *Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewiſe often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id eſt*; h. e. *hoc eſt*; e. g. *exempli gratiâ*; v. g. *verbi gratiâ*.

Capitals were uſed by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpoſe were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I, denotes *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combination of theſe five letters, all the different numbers are expreſſed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. ſignifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a leſs value is placed before a letter of a greater, the leſs takes away what it ſtands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it ſtands for to the greater; thus,

IV.	Four.	V.	Five.	VI.	Six.
IX.	Nine.	X.	Ten.	XI.	Eleven.
XL.	Forty.	L.	Fifty.	LX.	Sixty.
XC.	Ninety.	C.	A hundred.	CX.	A hundred and ten.

A thouſand is marked thus, ↀ, which in later times was contracted into M. *Five Hundred* is marked thus, Ɔ. or, by contraction, D.

The annexing of ↀ to Ɔ. makes its value ten times greater; thus ƆↃ. marks *five thouſand*; and ƆƆↃↀ. *fifty thouſand*.

The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of ↀ to the number ↀ, makes its value ten times greater; thus, Cↀ, denotes *ten thouſand*; and CCCↀↀ. *a hundred thouſand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occaſion to expreſs a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCↀↀ, CCCↀↀ. ſignified *two hundred thouſand*, &c.

We ſometimes find *thouſands* expreſſed by a ſtraight line drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, $\overline{\text{III}}$. denotes *three thouſand*; $\overline{\text{X}}$. *ten thouſand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more ſimple, by theſe ten characters, or *Figures*, which, from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits*;

1 *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*, 0 *nought*, *nothing*. The first nine are called *Significant Figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another, increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left thus,

8 Eight 85 Eighty-five. 856 Eight hundred and fifty-six. 8566 Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times: thus,

1 One.	10 Ten.	100 A hundred.	1000 A thousand.
2 Two.	20 Twenty.	200 Two hundred.	2000 Two thousand.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them tygether: CIↃ,IↃCCIXXX, or M,DCCLXXX, 1780.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the nones fell upon the seventh day, and the ides on the fifteeenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked *Kalendis Januariis* or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the

thirtieth day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* ſcil. *die ante*; or, *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And ſo on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris*: The day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* ſcil. *ante*: the day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and ſo back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked, *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*; The day before the nones, *Pridie Non Dec. &c.* and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Biſſextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVEMQUE tricenos;
Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;
At ſi biſſextus fuerit; ſuperadditur unus.
Tu primam menſis lucem dic eſſe kalendas,
Sex MAIUS, nonas, OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
Quatuor at reliqui; dahit idus quilibet octo.
Omnes poſt idus luces dic eſſe kalendas,
Nomen ſortiri debent a menſe ſequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *October*, was marked XVIII. Kal. of the following month; the 15th, XVII. Kal. &c. The 14th day of *January*, *Auguſt*, and *December*, XIX. Kal. &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. Kal. &c. And the 14th day of February, XVI. Kal. Martii or Martias. The names of all the months are uſed as Subſtantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is uſed only as a Subſtantive.

FINIS.